

# CONTENTS

# 目录

## Unit 1 The mass media

Period 1	Welcome to the unit .....	001
Period 2	Reading (1) .....	002
Period 3	Reading (2) .....	004
Period 4	Grammar and usage .....	011
每周巩固 1	Welcome to the unit—Grammar and usage .....	017
Period 5	Integrated skills .....	019
Period 6	Extended reading & Project .....	024
每周巩固 2	Integrated skills—Project .....	029

## Unit 2 Sports culture

Period 1	Welcome to the unit .....	031
Period 2	Reading (1) .....	032
Period 3	Reading (2) .....	034
Period 4	Grammar and usage .....	041
每周巩固 1	Welcome to the unit—Grammar and usage .....	047
Period 5	Integrated skills .....	049
Period 6	Extended reading & Project .....	054
每周巩固 2	Integrated skills—Project .....	059

# 目录

# CONTENTS

## Unit 3 Fit for life

Period 1	Welcome to the unit	061
Period 2	Reading (1)	062
Period 3	Reading (2)	064
Period 4	Grammar and usage	071
每周巩固 1	Welcome to the unit—Grammar and usage	077
Period 5	Integrated skills	079
Period 6	Extended reading & Project	083
每周巩固 2	Integrated skills—Project	089

## Unit 4 Living with technology

Period 1	Welcome to the unit	091
Period 2	Reading (1)	092
Period 3	Reading (2)	094
Period 4	Grammar and usage	101
每周巩固 1	Welcome to the unit—Grammar and usage	106
Period 5	Integrated skills	108
Period 6	Extended reading & Project	113
每周巩固 2	Integrated skills—Project	119
参考答案		121

## Unit 1 The mass media

### Period 1 Welcome to the unit

阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项

I fell for fake news on social networking sites. Here's why millions of you did, too.

The video is crazy, but I can't tear my eyes away. A plane, 1 in a huge storm, does a 360-degree turn-over before 2 landing. It turns out the video is totally nonsense, 3 together from a computer-generated clip and unrelated real news footage (镜头). But that didn't 4 such a post from arriving in my News Feed via a friend. I watched it. Maybe you did, too—it has nearly 14 million 5.

If you think you're immune to this stuff, you're wrong. 6 what's fake in images and video is getting harder. Misinformation is part of an online economy that weaponizes social media to 7 from our clicks. And with the right tools to stop it still a long way off, we all need to get 8 about it.

Fake news producers also use our friends to 9 their credibility (可信度). When I saw the plane video, my doubts weren't on high alert 10 it came from my friend. He told me he realized later the video was a fake. "It's just funny thinking about the steps by which we get 11," he said.

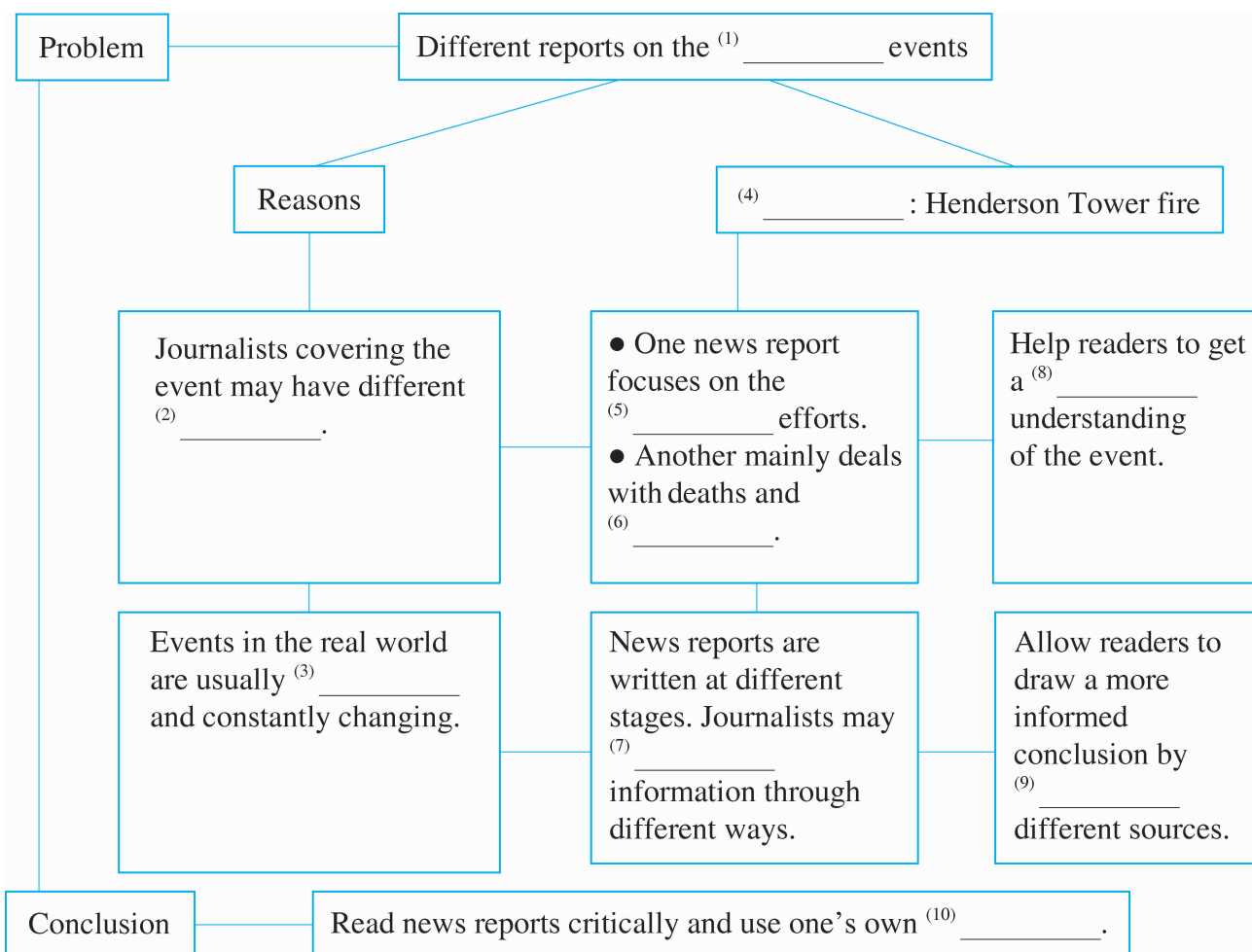
Maybe we'll eventually learn to be less 12 of friends—at least the online ones. The people we 13 for information in the real world aren't always the people who 14 our social media feeds. Or if you want to avoid being that friend—before you 15 the shocking incident online, consider the source.

- |                 |                  |                 |                 |
|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. sliding   | B. separating    | C. struggling   | D. surrounding  |
| 2. A. safely    | B. dependently   | C. surprisingly | D. illegally    |
| 3. A. put       | B. taken         | C. collected    | D. gained       |
| 4. A. ban       | B. protect       | C. attract      | D. stop         |
| 5. A. sights    | B. views         | C. looks        | D. scenes       |
| 6. A. Thinking  | B. Watching      | C. Spotting     | D. Tasting      |
| 7. A. profit    | B. benefit       | C. recover      | D. differ       |
| 8. A. easier    | B. more careless | C. smarter      | D. more curious |
| 9. A. make up   | B. take in       | C. add to       | D. break down   |
| 10. A. though   | B. because       | C. even if      | D. as long as   |
| 11. A. excited  | B. puzzled       | C. inspired     | D. cheated      |
| 12. A. familiar | B. trusting      | C. fond         | D. convincing   |
| 13. A. rely on  | B. focus on      | C. take on      | D. look on      |
| 14. A. simplify | B. prefer        | C. notice       | D. fill         |
| 15. A. write    | B. spread        | C. circle       | D. retell       |

## Period 2 Reading (1)

### 进阶 1: 基础巩固

一、根据 Reading 课文内容完成思维导图, 每空一词



二、根据 Reading 课文内容填空, 每空一词或两词

A terrible fire broke out on the night of 9 July, <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the Henderson Tower seriously. The fire is thought to <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ from the 8th floor. It then spread quickly through the tower block and <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ people on the upper floors. Fire engines and <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ were called at 9: 30 p.m. and they reached the scene within 15 minutes, by which time the fire had extended to the 15th floor. Around 11 p.m., firefighters got the fire <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. By the morning of 11 July, 4 people have been <sup>(6)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ dead and dozens of people have <sup>(7)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Mr Peterson, head of the fire service, confirms that the fire <sup>(8)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ by a dropped cigarette on a carpet of the 8th floor and somehow the <sup>(9)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ fire alarms didn't go off immediately. A team of investigators are <sup>(10)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the accident further.



## 进阶 2: 综合拓展

### 一、阅读下面短文,从短文后的选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项,选项中有两项为多余选项

The traditional news media in America has been having a rough time in the last few years. <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ The problem is preference. <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ However, in reality most news outlets have their own agenda to advance. Getting “the masses” to view the world from a certain perspective has always been a priceless power to manage.

<sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Well, according to a recent survey, 8 out of 10 Americans believe that the news media is critical to their democracy (民主制度). The gap between these high expectations of an honest, objective media and the performance that they actually deliver is large. When examples of media manipulation (操纵) being exposed are hugely damaging the trust, people naturally turn to social media for other, even-easier-to-manipulate sources. <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

People have been posting examples of how media can use different techniques to trick you into seeing exactly what they want you to see. <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Get your news from a wide range of different sources, and you’ll have a more rounded view of the world.

- A. Why is trust in the media becoming low?
- B. Actually, the mistrust affects people’s life badly.
- C. As you will discover, perspective really is everything.
- D. Ideally the media should be objective and hold power to account.
- E. People think it is getting harder to determine which news is accurate.
- F. These have put netizens in a dilemma that may cause more puzzlement.
- G. Thus people are in current state where they feel confused and mistrustful.

### 二、阅读下面短文,在空白处填入 1 个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式

Who cleans the dishes in an advertisement for dish soap? Maybe you automatically imagine a woman doing the job. <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (similar), men are usually the owners and drivers in promotions for cars. It seems that advertisements <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (create) gender stereotypes (刻板印象) for audiences up to now. In June, Advertising Standards Authority set out a new rule, <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ states, “Ads must not include gender stereotypes that are likely to cause harm.”

You may think that advertisements are mostly <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (commerce) promotions that no one takes seriously. <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, according to a research, they send out certain messages that can have a big impact on the audience. These stereotypical roles in ads may mislead people as to <sup>(6)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ they can do with their lives. It may hold some people back <sup>(7)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ their potentials, or from demanding certain jobs and industries, <sup>(8)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (bring) costs for individuals and economy.

While advertising is only one of many factors that contribute to <sup>(9)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (equal) gender outcomes, tougher advertising standards can play an important role in handling inequalities and <sup>(10)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (improve) outcomes for individuals and society.



## Period 3 Reading (2)

**教材 P2** Fears grew that the number of deaths could reach 5, according to figures released by emergency services. 根据应急服务部门发布的数据,人们担心死亡人数可能会达到 5 人。

**Point 1** **Fears grew that ...** that 引导同位语从句,说明 fears 的内容

### ★ 解析

同位语从句用来对其前面的抽象名词进行解释说明,被解释说明的词和同位语在逻辑上是主表关系。

### ★ 拓展

同位语从句和定语从句的区别:

1. 定语从句用来说明先行词的性质或特征,起修饰或限制作用,两者之间是修饰与被修饰的关系;
2. 同位语从句解释说明的名词通常具有抽象意义,而定语从句的先行词无此限制;
3. 在同位语从句中,that 是从属连词,在句中只起到引导作用,没有具体的意义,且不作任何成分,但不能省略;而在定语从句中,that 是关系代词,它在从句中不但起连接作用,还作主语、宾语或表语。作宾语时可省略,指物时还可以用 which 代替,指人时可以用 who 代替。

**教材 P2** By this time, the fire had extended to the 15th floor. 这个时候,火势已经蔓延到 15 楼。

**Point 2** **extend v.** 延伸(距离);扩大;伸展;延长

### ★ 解析

The table extends to 220 cm. 桌子伸展后长 220 厘米。

They have extended the deadline by 24 hours. 他们已经将最后期限延长了 24 小时。

We should extend the use of the standard Chinese language. 我们应当推广标准汉语的使用。

### ★ 拓展

extensive *adj.* 广阔的;大量的;广泛的,广博的

**教材 P2** The fire has also left dozens of people injured, 5 of whom are in a critical condition. 大火还导致了许多人受伤,其中 5 人伤势严重。

## Point 1

用正确的连接词或关系词填空,并判断从句类型

1. We expressed the hope \_\_\_\_\_ they would come and visit China.
2. Robots can shine in fields \_\_\_\_\_ require professional skills.
3. The singer made a promise \_\_\_\_\_ pleased all her fans.

[答案]

1. that (同位语从句)
2. that/which (定语从句)
3. that/which (定语从句)

## Point 2

完成句子

1. The show has \_\_\_\_\_ (延长) for another 6 weeks.
2. Her writing career \_\_\_\_\_ (超过了 40 年).
3. The fire caused \_\_\_\_\_ (巨大的破坏).

[答案]

1. been extended
2. extended over 40 years
3. extensive damage

**Point 3** dozens of 很多,许多

## ★ 解析

Dozens of doctors and nurses have been working day and night for weeks. 很多医生和护士已经夜以继日地工作数周了。

## ★ 拓展

当 dozen 与具体数字连用时,和 score、hundred、thousand、million 等一样,不加复数词尾-s。如:

Mother bought me two dozen pencils. 母亲给我买了两打铅笔。

**教材 P2** ... and that the automatic fire alarms did not go off quickly enough to prevent the disaster. ……自动火警报警器并没有及时响起以阻止灾难发生。

**Point 4** go off (警报器)突然大作

## ★ 解析

The alarm did go off but all I did was yawn, turn over and go back to sleep. 闹钟确实响了,但我只是打了个哈欠,翻个身又接着睡着了。

## ★ 拓展

go off 失去对……的兴趣;爆炸;停止运转;变质

**教材 P3** It is advisable to remember that journalists may have different priorities, which would influence how they report an event. 最好记住,不同的记者关注重点各有不同,这将影响他们如何报道一个事件。

**Point 5** priority n. 首要事情,优先事项;重点,优先权

## ★ 解析

The government's priority is to build more power plants. 政府的首要任务是建造更多的发电站。

## ★ 拓展

give priority to 优先考虑;给……优先权

a top priority 最优先考虑的事

**教材 P3** Even if news reports are written from basically the same perspective, they may contradict each other in terms of factual details, as events in the real world are usually complicated and constantly changing. 即使新闻报道写作视角基本一致,它们在具体细节上也可能互相矛盾,因为现实世界通常复杂而多变。

**Point 3**

用 dozen 的正确形式填空

- I've been there \_\_\_\_\_ of times.
- His chicken eggs sell for 22 yuan a \_\_\_\_\_.
- The college students arrived in \_\_\_\_\_.

[答案]

- dozens
- dozen
- dozens

**Point 4**

写出以下句中 go off 的含义

- As the water came in the windows, all the lights went off. \_\_\_\_\_
- Don't eat that! It's gone off! \_\_\_\_\_
- I started to go off the idea. \_\_\_\_\_

[答案]

- 熄灭
- 变质
- 失去兴趣

**Point 5**

翻译句子

学校将重点发展科学、数学和现代语言。

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

[答案]

The school will give priority to science, maths and modern languages.



**Point 6** **contradict** *vt.* 相矛盾,相反;反驳,驳斥

★ 解析

The two pieces of evidence contradict each other. 这两份证据相互矛盾。

All evening her son contradicted everything she said. 整个晚上她说什么她儿子都反驳。

★ 拓展

contradictory *adj.* 相互矛盾的;对立的;不一致的

contradiction *n.* (事实、看法、行动等的)不一致,矛盾;驳斥

**教材 P3** Though journalists are committed to presenting the truth, it is better to use our own judgement than rely entirely on news reports. 尽管记者致力于呈现真相,但我们最好还是运用自己的判断力,而非完全依赖新闻报道。

**Point 7** **committed** *adj.* 尽心尽力的;承诺过的

★ 解析

be committed to doing sth 致力于

If you want to get ahead in life, you must be committed to achieving your dreams. 要想取得人生的成功,你就必须全身心投入于实现你的梦想。

★ 拓展

commit *vt.* 承诺;犯(罪);花(时间、钱) *vi.* 忠于

commitment *n.* 奉献,投入;许诺

commit sb/oneself to (doing) sth 使某人/自己致力于(做)某事

**进阶 1: 基础巩固**

一、根据句意写出画线单词的词性及含义

1. The incident happened at a critical point in the campaign.

She viewed the findings with a critical eye.

2. The prisoner was questioned before his release.

They will only release information if it suits them.

I think we have different methods to release stress.

3. This travel book is a comprehensive guide to the region.

**Point 6**

完成句子

1. He \_\_\_\_\_  
(自相矛盾) frequently in his book.
2. She made two \_\_\_\_\_  
(自相矛盾的承诺).

[答案]

1. contradicts himself
2. contradictory promises

**Point 7**

写出以下句中画线部分的含义

1. I have never committed any crime.
2. They called on charities to commit more money to poor people.
3. We made a commitment to keep working together.

[答案]

1. 犯罪
2. 投入更多的钱
3. 承诺

If a person has a comprehensive mind, he is able to understand many different things.

4. Both federal and state laws protect you against racial discrimination.

He showed a total lack of discrimination in the way he decorated his room.

## 二、根据首字母或中文提示填空

- There are unconfirmed reports saying that he tried to c\_\_\_\_\_ suicide.
- One f\_\_\_\_\_ move and I knew Sarah would fail.
- Some medical staff and patients never c\_\_\_\_\_ while others often have conflict.
- Two survivors were cut free after being t\_\_\_\_\_ for twenty minutes.
- You have to develop your potential to the m\_\_\_\_\_.
- The coffee was almost too hot to swallow and made him c\_\_\_\_\_ for a moment.
- The company plans to e\_\_\_\_\_ its operations into Europe.
- The article contained several \_\_\_\_\_ (事实的) errors.
- The proposals deserve support as they give \_\_\_\_\_ (优先事项) to the needs of children.
- I think it may take some time before we can have a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ (精确的) assessment of the damage.
- Is the production line fully \_\_\_\_\_ (自动的)? What kind of quality control do you have?
- She is known in Italy for a number of \_\_\_\_\_ (次要的) roles in films.
- I gave in to \_\_\_\_\_ (好奇心) and opened the letter addressed to him.
- People were \_\_\_\_\_ (尖叫); some of the houses near the bridge were on fire.

## 三、从方框内选择适当的词组,并用其正确形式填空

for instance	sum up	bring ... to light	rely on
come about	under construction	be committed to	go off

- A few minutes later the bomb \_\_\_\_\_, destroying the vehicle.
- The larger cities have metro systems in operation, \_\_\_\_\_, or in the planning stage.
- There are jobs more dangerous than truck driving; \_\_\_\_\_, training lions.
- I don't know how this confusion has \_\_\_\_\_.
- We hope the investigator will \_\_\_\_\_ more facts about this murder \_\_\_\_\_.
- Well, \_\_\_\_\_, success results from hard work.
- She is not worth \_\_\_\_\_ at all. She arrived an hour late for an important meeting yesterday.
- If the parents were busy, their children would \_\_\_\_\_ the care of an aunt.



## 进阶 2: 能力提升

### 一、同义句转换

- It is believed that a bomb planted by terrorists caused a passenger plane to break up in the air.  
A passenger plane broke up in the air, which is believed \_\_\_\_\_ by a bomb planted by terrorists.
- Police are still looking into how the accident happened.  
Police are still \_\_\_\_\_ of the accident.
- The little boy was on the point of having a bath when he heard his neighbour screaming.  
The little boy was \_\_\_\_\_ have a bath \_\_\_\_\_ his neighbour screamed.
- As to whether you like your major or if it suits you, it's unnecessary for you to conclude in a hurry.  
There is no need to \_\_\_\_\_ on whether you like your major or if it suits you.

### 二、根据中文提示完成句子

- 多数被救的矿工受了轻伤,已被紧急送往当地医院。  
Most of the \_\_\_\_\_ miners suffer \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ to a local hospital.
- 他全身心投入钢琴弹奏练习,在几个月内就达到了不错的水平。  
He \_\_\_\_\_ the piano and within a couple of months he could play reasonably well.
- 许多学生被烟雾和火焰困在了较高的一层楼上。  
Many students were left \_\_\_\_\_ by smoke and fire on \_\_\_\_\_.
- 公司要求所有员工遵守安全条例和程序。  
It is \_\_\_\_\_ in that company that all the staff \_\_\_\_\_ and procedures.
- 如果团队成员对待成功的看法不一样,问题就会产生。  
Problems arise in a team if members don't see success \_\_\_\_\_.
- 关于如何治疗这种疾病,医学界在不同的阶段有不同的看法。  
As to how to treat the disease, medical opinion \_\_\_\_\_.
- 另一个值得一提的方面是该记者并未呈现真相。  
Another aspect \_\_\_\_\_ is that the journalist didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
- 我学到的第一件事就是,要批判性地对待我们接收到的信息,不盲目相信所谓的专家。  
The first thing I learned was to \_\_\_\_\_ the information we received and not \_\_\_\_\_ so-called experts.

### 进阶 3: 综合拓展

#### 一、阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳选项

The newspaper must provide for the reader the facts, pure, unprejudiced (无偏见的), objectively selected facts. But in these days of complex news, it must provide more; it must supply interpretation (解释), the meaning of the facts. This is a very important assignment facing American journalists—to make clear to the reader the problems of the day, to make international news understandable as community news, to recognize that there is no longer any such thing as “local” news, because any event in the international area has a local reaction in the financial market, political circles, in terms, indeed, of our very way of life.

The opponents (反对者) of interpretation insist that the writer and the editor shall limit themselves to the “facts”. This insistence raises one question: what are the facts?

The reporter collects, say, fifty facts; out of these fifty, his space being necessarily restricted, he selects the ten which he considers most important. This is Judgement Number One. Then he or his editor decides which of these ten facts shall make up the lead of the piece, which is an important decision because many readers do not proceed beyond the first paragraph. This is Judgement Number Two. Then the night editor determines whether the article shall be presented on page one, where it has a large influence, or on page twenty four, where it has little. Judgement Number Three.

Thus in the presentation of a so-called “factual” or “objective” story, at least three judgements are involved. And they are judgements not at all unlike those involved in interpretation, in which reporters and editors, calling upon their research resources, their general background, and their “news neutralism (中立)”, arrive at a conclusion as to the significance of the news.

The two areas of judgement, presentation of the news and its interpretation, are both objective and subjective processes. If an editor is determined to give a prejudiced view of the news, he can do it in other ways and more effectively than by interpretation. He can do it by the selection of those facts that support his particular viewpoint. Or he can do it by the place he gives a story—promoting it to page one or dragging it to page thirty.

1. According to the first paragraph, which of the following statements is true?
  - A. If a reporter makes clear the facts he writes, he will no doubt get into trouble.
  - B. Journalists must select facts objectively to make current events clear to readers.
  - C. The most important task of reporters is to provide unprejudiced facts for readers.
  - D. For reporters, interpretation of facts is no less important than presentation of the facts.
2. Where a story is presented in a newspaper shows \_\_\_\_\_.
 

A. the editor's prejudice	B. the reporter's background
C. the story's factual matter	D. the story's effect on readers





3. Which of the following can best express the author's attitude towards objectiveness?
- A. Objectiveness is controlled by editors rather than writers.
  - B. Properly choosing facts prepares a solid ground for objectiveness.
  - C. He doesn't think there exists complete objectiveness in news writing.
  - D. To make clear the news is a way to be objective and responsible for readers.

二、阅读下面短文,从短文后的选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项,选项中有两项为多余选项

From the earliest days of our country, we have seen education as the foundation for democracy and citizenship. <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Is investing in a college or university education still worth it? The answer is definitely "Yes."

From a financial point of view, a college education surely pays off. Students who graduate from college can expect to make about 60% more than those who do not. Completing college makes an even greater difference to the earning power of young women. A 25-to-34-year-old female with a bachelor's degree can expect to make 70% more than if she had only completed her high school diploma.

<sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

<sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ One of the most important ways students learn at college is by interacting with people different from themselves. I recall one student who was admitted to Harvard but wasn't sure he would fit in. However, one night he found himself debating the characteristics that define a genuine hero with other admitted students from around the world. <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ But the differences were what made the conversation exciting, and he realized how much he could learn at a place full of interesting people with a wide range of viewpoints.

College teaches students the strength of slowing down. No one denies the value of speed. But "thinking" is a word that is too often forgotten. College teaches students to slow down, to change information into insight and knowing into understanding. <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ The result is that students grow in knowledge and in wisdom for a lifetime.

To conclude, investing in a college or university education is well worth it. College opens opportunities reflected in earning and employment statistics. But more importantly, in college students have acquired a new way of transforming the world, through the power of learning, analyzing, changing to adapt to what they have come to understand.

- A. Not everyone agreed.
- B. It develops critical thinking.
- C. College introduces students to people they've never met before.
- D. College gives students a chance to understand themselves differently.
- E. But what about the benefits of college that are more difficult to measure?
- F. Yet high school students and families are increasingly questioning its value.
- G. College is a passport to different places, different times, and different ways of thinking.



## Period 4 Grammar and usage

### 过去完成时

过去完成时表示过去某一时间前就已经发生或完成了的动作。它表示动作发生的时间是“过去的过去”，侧重事情的结果。

#### 一、过去完成时的基本结构

主语+had+动词过去分词

1. 肯定句：主语+had+动词过去分词+其他。
2. 否定句：主语+had+not+动词过去分词+其他。
3. 疑问句：Had+主语+动词过去分词+其他？  
肯定回答：Yes, 主语+had。  
否定回答：No, 主语+hadn't。
4. 特殊疑问句：特殊疑问词或词组+had+主语+动词过去分词+其他？
5. 被动语态：主语+had (not)+been+动词过去分词+其他。

#### 二、过去完成时的基本用法

1. 表示在过去某一时刻前完成了的动作，即“过去的过去”，可以与 by、before 等引导的介词短语或时间状语从句连用。例如：  
By nine o'clock last night, we had got 200 pictures from the spaceship.
2. 表示由过去的某一时刻开始，一直延续到过去另一时间的动作或状态，常和 when 等构成的时间状语连用。例如：  
I had been at the bus stop for 20 minutes when a bus finally came.
3. 在已叙述了过去发生的事情后，反过来追述或补述以前发生的动作时，常使用过去完成时。例如：  
Mr Smith died yesterday. He had been a good friend of mine.
4. 在含有定语从句的主从复合句中，如果叙述过去的事，先发生的动作常用过去完成时。例如：  
I returned the book that I had borrowed.
5. 过去完成时常常用在 told、said、knew、heard、thought 等动词后的宾语从句（或间接引语）中，这时从句中的动作发生在主句表示的过去的动作之前。例如：  
I thought I had sent the letter a week before.
6. 状语从句：在过去不同时间发生的两个动作中，发生在前的动作，用过去完成时；发生在后的动作，用一般过去时。例如：  
When I woke up, it had already stopped raining.  
She didn't go to bed until she had finished her work.

注意：如果两个动作紧接着发生，则常常不用过去完成时，特别是在包含 before 和 after 的复合

句中,因为从句动作和主句动作发生的先后顺序已经非常明确,可以用一般过去时代替过去完成时。例如:

After he arrived in England, Marx worked hard to improve his English.

7. 动词 think、want、hope、mean、plan、intend 等用过去完成时表示过去未曾实现的想法、希望、打算或意图等。例如:

They had wanted to help but could not get there in time.

We had hoped to be able to come and see you.

8. 过去完成时还可用在 hardly ... when ...、no sooner ... than ...、It was the first (second, etc.) time (that) ...等固定句型中。例如:

Hardly had he begun to speak when the audience interrupted him.

No sooner had he arrived than he went away again.

It was the third time that he had been out of work that year.

### 三、与其他时态的区别

1. 过去完成时与现在完成时的区别。

现在完成时表示的动作发生在过去,以现在为基点,但侧重对现在产生的结果或造成的影响;过去完成时则是一个相对的时态,以过去时间为基点,它所表示的动作不仅发生在过去,更强调“过去的过去”,只有和过去某时或某动作相比较时,才用到它。例如:

I have learned 1,000 English words **so far**.

I had learned 1,000 English words **till then**.

2. 过去完成时与一般过去时的区别。

时间状语不同:过去完成时在时间上强调“过去的过去”,而一般过去时只强调过去某一特定的时间。例如:

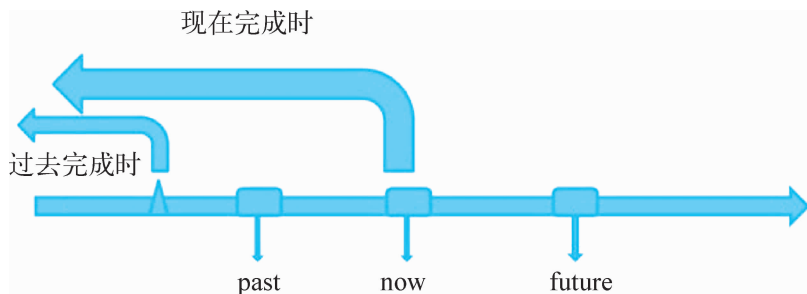
They had arrived at the station **by ten yesterday**.

They arrived at the station **at ten yesterday**.

过去完成时表示过去的过去,不单独使用,常和一般过去时一起使用。

当两个或两个以上接连发生的动作作用 and 或 but 连接时,按时间顺序,只需用一般过去时来代替过去完成时;另外,在 before、after、as soon as 引导的从句中,由于这些连词本身已经表示出时间的先后,因此也可以用一般过去时来代替过去完成时。例如:

He entered the room, turned on the light and read an evening paper.



## 进阶 1: 基础巩固

### 一、根据首字母或中文提示填空

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ (创建) the Centre for Journalism Studies at that university last year.
2. The film takes no position on the \_\_\_\_\_ (政治) of Northern Ireland.
3. Her assistant was a \_\_\_\_\_ of theft and robbery by the police.
4. We're probably at an e \_\_\_\_\_ of about 13,000 feet above sea level.
5. The p \_\_\_\_\_ offers a lot of benefits, one of which is career development training.
6. It was her \_\_\_\_\_ (戏剧) teacher that spotted her potential.
7. If you get a s \_\_\_\_\_ from a school or university, your studies are paid for by the school or university or by some other organizations.
8. The judges could not decide which \_\_\_\_\_ (类别) it belonged to.
9. The news may be unexpected; \_\_\_\_\_ (尽管如此), it is true.
10. Today every c \_\_\_\_\_ aged eighteen or over in China has the right to vote.

### 二、同义句转换

1. Mark studied at this university from 2012 to 2016. He studied very hard and was made Chairman of the Students' Union.

Mark was a student of this university from 2012 to 2016, \_\_\_\_\_ he studied very hard and was made Chairman of the Students' Union.

2. Don't accuse people of committing any crime if you don't have any evidence.  
Never \_\_\_\_\_ people \_\_\_\_\_ any crime if you don't have any evidence.

3. Three postgraduate students intended to establish their own export business.  
Three postgraduate students intended to \_\_\_\_\_ their own export business.

4. The professor considers himself an expert on the subject.  
The professor \_\_\_\_\_ himself \_\_\_\_\_ an expert on the subject.

### 三、用括号中所给单词的正确形式填空

1. No sooner \_\_\_\_\_ (he; be seated) than the bus started.
2. The twins, who \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) their homework, were allowed to play outdoors.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ (plan) to go for a walk, but someone called and I couldn't get away.
4. The climbers succeeded in climbing to the top of the mountain and they owed their success to the preparations they \_\_\_\_\_ (make).
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ (intend) to do everything according to the schedule, but it didn't go on as planned.
6. Writing out the invitations by hand was more time-consuming than we \_\_\_\_\_ (expect).



## 进阶 2: 能力提升

### 一、用括号中所给单词的正确形式填空

- My dad began to teach me English when I was eight.  
—Wow. You must have had a good command of English, \_\_\_\_\_ (have) you?
- The wet weather will continue next week when a cold front \_\_\_\_\_ (expect) to arrive.
- By the time Jane gets home, her aunt \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) for Hong Kong to attend a meeting.
- By the time Jack returned home from England, his daughter \_\_\_\_\_ (graduate) from college.
- Hello. You \_\_\_\_\_ (reach) 68442. I'm sorry I'm unable to answer your call right now. Please dial later.
- I didn't ask for the name list. Why \_\_\_\_\_ (it; land) on my desk?  
—I put it there just now in case you needed it.
- Only when all the others had left did Linda realize that she \_\_\_\_\_ (make) fun of.
- I wonder what makes you a good salesperson?  
—I once \_\_\_\_\_ (serve) as a waiter, which contributes a lot to my today's work.

### 二、阅读下面短文,在空白处填入 1 个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式

Climate journalism swept the floor at the honoured Pulitzer Prizes on Monday, with *The Washington Post* <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (win) the explanatory reporting award for its series examining the dangerous effects of a 2 degrees Celsius rise in global temperatures. Other environmental stories were featured as finalists across <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (vary) categories, signalling a <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (turn) point for climate change in the global agenda (议事日程).

*The Washington Post* won <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ top prize for explanatory reporting for its “2°C: Beyond the Limit” series, <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ investigated the impacts of temperature rise beyond the threshold (临界值) that scientists have advised the world <sup>(6)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) within. The award cited (嘉奖) the series as “groundbreaking” and based <sup>(7)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the scientific facts.

Meanwhile, a number of other climate-related stories <sup>(8)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (recognize) as finalists in different categories, including the *Los Angeles Times*' <sup>(9)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (interact) piece on the impact of sea-level rise on California's coastline communities. While all the winners are US-based, with Asian <sup>(10)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (cover) for the most part unrepresented, it's encouraging to see environmental journalism receive its deserved due.

### 进阶 3: 综合拓展

#### 一、阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳选项

WeChat has a voice message function that allows you to press a button and record your message. For average people, this is just another way of sending messages. However, sending a voice message via WeChat is considered unwelcome in the Chinese professional world, and usually only tolerated if it is sent from a superior to an inferior.

Why is that? Many professionals in China use WeChat, not email, as the primary medium for workplace communication.

If you're in a noisy place, you have to strain your ears or find a quiet place to hear it. If you're in a library, you have to dig up your headphones. If you're in a meeting, you have to wait until the meeting is over. Fully taking in the message requires careful listening and sometimes even transcription.

There is no denying that audio message from WeChat can be transformed into text message automatically. Unfortunately, this only works in the simplified Chinese version of the WeChat app, let alone the inaccuracy when the sender speaks a Chinese dialect or with a strong accent.

Moreover, WeChat does not support pausing in the middle of playing a voice message, so you must replay the whole message from the very beginning if you miss one important word. Sending someone a voice message instead of typing it out tells them, "I'm obviously busier and more important than you." The sender saves time at the expense of the recipient (接受者). Thus it is almost used in asymmetric relationships: when a boss is communicating a directive to an employee, for example.

While the microphone button is tempting, stick to the keyboard. Do not send voice messages on WeChat in a professional situation unless you are communicating with people who clearly consider you to be their boss.

- What's the writer's purpose in writing the passage?
  - To introduce a voice message function to us.
  - To explain how to send a WeChat voice message.
  - To call on us to avoid sending WeChat voice messages.
  - To advise employees to respect their bosses.
- What does the underlined word "asymmetric" in Paragraph 5 mean?
  - Not equal.
  - Not harmonious.
  - Not close.
  - Not peaceful.
- What can be inferred from the passage?
  - In any case, sending a voice message via WeChat is unwelcome.
  - The voice message must be transformed into text message accurately.
  - Sending WeChat voice messages is a status symbol.
  - Pausing in the middle of playing a voice message is not supported.



## 二、阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项

Honesty seems like such a no-brainer of a requirement. But it caused much controversy (争议) in Canada over the past few weeks—controversy 1 by the upcoming launch of a new, politically conservative Canadian television channel called Sun TV. It centred on Canada's Broadcasting Act of 1986, which states that a licensee shall not 2 false or misleading news.

At first glance, it seemed such a(n) 3, common-sense requirement that I was a little 4 that the Canadians had felt it a need to put it in 5, or that anyone could possibly argue against it. But then I realized how significant it really was. I also began to consider why we don't have a(n) 6 requirement here in the US and how different our public 7 might be if we did.

The debate over the Canadian rule erupted in January, when the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) 8 amending (修正) the rule to prohibit only: ... any news that the licensee knows to be false or misleading and that endangers or is likely to endanger the lives, health or 9 of the public.

The 10 of the proposed amendment apparently goes back ten years to a Canadian Supreme Court ruling which affirmed the 11 of free speech of a Holocaust denier (大屠杀否认者) named Ernst Zundel to support those 12. The Canadian government later asked the CRTC to 13 its "false and misleading news" prohibition to determine if it went against free-speech guarantees.

The CRTC 14 its feet for ten years. Then this January, the proposed amendment was announced. Why was the 15 action taken after ten years of inaction? That's part of the controversy.

- |                      |               |                |                |
|----------------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. challenged     | B. heightened | C. recommended | D. advised     |
| 2. A. broadcast      | B. launch     | C. announce    | D. publish     |
| 3. A. necessary      | B. accurate   | C. important   | D. obvious     |
| 4. A. anxious        | B. surprised  | C. familiar    | D. determined  |
| 5. A. mind           | B. hand       | C. writing     | D. controversy |
| 6. A. practical      | B. illegal    | C. similar     | D. factual     |
| 7. A. discrimination | B. commitment | C. curiosity   | D. response    |
| 8. A. proposed       | B. imagined   | C. admitted    | D. considered  |
| 9. A. danger         | B. safety     | C. threat      | D. priority    |
| 10. A. investigation | B. root       | C. platform    | D. conclusion  |
| 11. A. option        | B. conclusion | C. instance    | D. right       |
| 12. A. views         | B. problems   | C. issues      | D. solutions   |
| 13. A. release       | B. criticize  | C. review      | D. contradict  |
| 14. A. pushed        | B. twisted    | C. dragged     | D. caught      |
| 15. A. sudden        | B. quick      | C. minor       | D. extra       |

## 每周巩固 1 Welcome to the unit—Grammar and usage

### 一、用括号中所给单词的正确形式填空

1. One may feel the social, economic and \_\_\_\_\_ (politics) pulse of the state.
2. Jane's idea of freedom was to have \_\_\_\_\_ (vary) in her lifestyle.
3. The lamp behind him seems to \_\_\_\_\_ (bath) him in warmth.
4. The cost of living has increased \_\_\_\_\_ (drama).
5. Much to her surprise, he had no words of blame or \_\_\_\_\_ (accuse) for her.
6. This has been my worst time for injuries since I started as a \_\_\_\_\_ (profession) footballer.
7. He has worked \_\_\_\_\_ (tire) to achieve his goal.
8. He was \_\_\_\_\_ (elevation) to the post of prime minister.
9. They live and work together in complete \_\_\_\_\_ (equal) and brotherhood.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ (employ) is so damaging both to individuals and to communities.

### 二、阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳选项

The news never sleeps, and neither do the two new anchors at China's state-run news agency. Xinhua News unveiled what it's calling the world's first news anchors powered by artificial intelligence, at the World Internet Conference Wednesday in China's Zhejiang province. From the outside, they're almost indistinguishable from their human counterparts, crisp-suited and tidy-haired. While Xinhua says the anchors have the "voice, facial expressions and actions of a real person", the robotic anchors broadcast whatever text is fed to them in artificial speech that sounds less human than Siri or Alexa.

"I will work tirelessly to keep you informed as texts will be typed into my system uninterrupted," the English-speaking version says in its introduction video.

Developed jointly by Xinhua News and a Chinese search engine company, the anchors learn from live broadcasting videos and social media and can work "24 hours a day".

The AI anchors are both modelled on real journalists at the agency, and perform some basic human expressions, like blinking and raising their eyebrows. They can be "endlessly copied" according to the introduction video, thus able to cover stories in multiple locations at once.

Although the AI anchors have unlimited energy, they lack decision-making and processing skills and cannot offer the emotional element given by a real journalist.

"As an AI news anchor under development, I know there is a lot for me to improve," the English-speaking anchor said in his first sign-off.

1. What are the two new AI anchors like?
  - A. They are well-dressed and look like real person.
  - B. They are artificial and have computerized voice.





- C. Their expressions and actions confuse audiences.  
D. Their appearances are well-received by audiences.
2. What does the underlined word “counterparts” in Paragraph 1 mean?  
A. Opponents.                      B. Anchors.                      C. Models.                      D. Creators.
3. Which of the following jointly developed the robotic anchors except Xinhua News?  
A. Journalists at Xinhua News.                      B. A Chinese search engine company.  
C. A foreign news agency.                      D. A state-run news agency of China.
4. What is the advantage of AI anchors according to the article?  
A. They are able to make decisions alone.                      B. They have their own emotions.  
C. They usually speak with beautiful voices.                      D. They have unlimited energy.

### 三、阅读下面短文,从短文后的选项选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项,选项中有两项为多余选项

What was once a subculture (非主流文化) has evolved into a \$5 billion business in China.

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ A documentary directed by Hao Wu reveals an online world where people can fulfil their most basic social needs.

(2) \_\_\_\_\_ They perform online in hope of quick fame and fortune. Big Li migrated (迁移) from Hubei to Beijing to work as a security guard, before striking it rich live-streaming (网络直播) full-time.

At the heart of the film, then, is a familiar story. Live-streaming started off full of creative, entrepreneurial (富有企业家精神的) and democratic potential but has since taken on an opposite feel.

(3) \_\_\_\_\_ However, the platform gives the rules of the game. “I was fascinated by how a single platform could profit from rich and poor alike,” Mr Wu tells *The Economist*. (4) \_\_\_\_\_ And he says he is sensitive to the ways in which users can be controlled and made use of for profit.

His thought-provoking (引人深思的) film reveals a bitter irony not limited to live-streaming.

(5) \_\_\_\_\_ Big Li’s family begins to fall apart. “I miss my son,” he admits in one scene, breaking down in tears in front of millions of his fans. He turns away, as if finally realizing that the faceless, flickering (闪烁) icons on his computer screen will not give him what he longs for.

- A. In 2016 nearly half the country’s Internet users watched a livestream.  
B. Before pursuing film-making, Mr Wu worked at two Internet companies.  
C. Recent years have witnessed the rapid increase in the use of online media.  
D. The livestreamers themselves are usually poorly educated and unemployed.  
E. The connection that technology was meant to provide has isolated people, too.  
F. Whoever shows interest in livestream can take part in the new field and seek great fortune from it.  
G. Everybody can participate in the competition for clicks and views in China’s attention economy.



## Period 5 Integrated skills

### 进阶 1: 基础巩固

#### 一、根据首字母或中文提示填空

- The government must \_\_\_\_\_ (对……征税) people to get money for running the country.
- In spite of all his efforts, his debts continued to m\_\_\_\_\_ up.
- The train was about to leave and I was not even on the p\_\_\_\_\_.
- W\_\_\_\_\_ to the crash say they saw an explosion just before the disaster.
- The country has also been granted \_\_\_\_\_ (会员) of the World Trade Organization.
- The price of grapes has s\_\_\_\_\_ up to 50 yuan a kilo.
- A paperback \_\_\_\_\_ (版本) is now available at bookshops.
- The concert will be b\_\_\_\_\_ live on television and radio.

#### 二、用括号中所给单词的正确形式填空

- I knew he was the man the police were looking for the \_\_\_\_\_ (instance) I saw him.
- The railroad line will greatly increase the \_\_\_\_\_ (access) of cities in the west.
- The newspaper made a \_\_\_\_\_ (comprehend) report of his deeds.
- You may have to change the numbers for \_\_\_\_\_ (update) versions.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (popular) of the network has a tremendous impact on people's lives.
- According to the \_\_\_\_\_ (office) figures, over 1,000 people died during the revolution.
- Real \_\_\_\_\_ (interact) with the child is particularly important when the child is trying to "crack the code" of speech.
- In modern society, a college student should acquire \_\_\_\_\_ (variety) branches of knowledge.

#### 三、根据中文提示完成句子

- 数年前,新的剧院和艺术中心突然在全国各地涌现出来。  
Several years ago, new theatres and arts centres \_\_\_\_\_ all over the country.
- 我得提醒自己表现得自信和表现得完美并不是一回事。  
I had to remind myself that being confident is not \_\_\_\_\_.
- 过去的几十年已见证了社交媒体的重大发展。  
The past \_\_\_\_\_ the significant development of \_\_\_\_\_.
- 因为你们的努力,这本书在许多国家都受到热烈欢迎。  
This book has \_\_\_\_\_ in many countries \_\_\_\_\_ your efforts.
- 智能手机已经改变了记者们的工作方式,现在他们的工作时间比以往任何时候都长。  
Smartphones \_\_\_\_\_ journalists work, and now they are working longer hours \_\_\_\_\_.

 **进阶 2: 能力提升****听力训练****第一节**

听下面 5 段对话。每段对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。每段对话仅读一遍。

1. What is Cindy's bad behaviour in class?  
A. Sending text messages.  
B. Arguing with Mr Jackson.  
C. Talking with her classmates.
2. What does the woman mean?  
A. She likes teenagers.  
B. Teenagers dislike the new TV series.  
C. The new TV series is no good to teenagers.
3. How much will the woman pay for her ticket?  
A. ¥210.    B. ¥260.    C. ¥470.
4. When may the man have the interview?  
A. This Wednesday morning.    B. Next Thursday afternoon.    C. Thirty minutes later.
5. What are the speakers mainly talking about?  
A. Details of the report.                      B. The data in the report.                      C. The use of the report.

**第二节**

听下面两段对话或独白。每段对话或独白后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项选出最佳选项。每段对话或独白读两遍。

听第 6 段材料,回答第 6、7 题。

6. What does the woman probably want to do?  
A. Play cards.    B. Go to the cinema.    C. Do some housework.
7. Which programme makes the man excited?  
A. The news.    B. TV series.    C. The football match.

听第 7 段材料,回答第 8 至 10 题。

8. How do British newspapers differ?  
A. In how they are liked by people.  
B. In the ways of carrying the news.  
C. In their importance in real life.

9. Why is *The Times* famous?
- A. It is the oldest London newspaper.  
B. It is the only independent newspaper in the UK.  
C. It is accurate and serious on the news.
10. What kind of letters are usually printed in *The Times*?
- A. Letters about traditions thirty years ago.  
B. Letters about new fashions.  
C. Letters about serious subjects.

## 写作训练

### 一、写作指导

观点表达类英语作文,比较典型的结构如下:

段落	思路点拨	语言积累
开头段	提出问题/现象	Most of us may have such experience that ... Nowadays, ... has become a very common matter in ... Recently, ... has been brought into focus.
主体段	方式 1: 陈述不同的观点及其理由	Different people hold different opinions. Opinions are divided. People have taken/adopted different attitudes towards ... People take different views on this question. ... of them hold the opinion that ... People who are for/against the idea think ... Some people believe that ... Others argue that ... However, each coin has two sides.
	方式 2: 说明自己的观点并陈述理由	It seems to me that ... I am of the opinion that/I take the view that ... I am sure/certain/convinced that ... I am not sure because I don't know the situation exactly. I am of mixed opinions about/on ...
结尾段	方式 1: 说明自己的观点	Personally, I think ... As far as I understand/can see, ... From my point of view/From what I know ...
	方式 2: 重申自己的观点	There is no doubt that ... What it comes down to is ... It is certain/obvious that ...



二、网络媒体是当之无愧的时代宠儿,如今越来越多的人从网络获取信息,有人预测传统印刷媒体如报纸最终会消亡。你是否同意这一说法?请列举两至三条理由。词数 150 左右。

---



---



---



---



---



---

### 进阶 3: 综合拓展

一、阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳选项

#### “Facts” that are false

*The \$100 bill is the biggest bill in circulation (流通).* Although the federal government stopped printing them in 1945, currency notes of \$500, \$1,000, \$5,000, and \$10,000 are still legal tender (法定货币). Most of them have been snatched up by private collectors. Between 18 December, 1934, and 9 January, 1935, the government put out \$100,000 notes. However, they were only for transactions (交易) between Federal Reserve banks and never went out to the general public.

*The Sahara is the world's largest desert.* Technically, Antarctica is. The US Geological Survey defines a desert as “dry land with a rainfall of usually less than ten inches per year that supports only sparse (稀疏的) vegetation and a limited population of people and animals”. Antarctica averages only six inches of rain a year (mostly as snow) and is almost 5.5 million square miles. The Sahara is only 3.3 million square miles.

*The green paste served with your sushi is wasabi.* Wasabi is expensive and difficult to grow. Since it's in the same family, most restaurants and food companies use horseradish (with food colouring) instead. Real wasabi is more complex and sweeter than what you get in a typical Japanese restaurant.

\_\_\_\_\_ The ostriches would suffocate (窒息) if they did. If an enemy is approaching, a frightened ostrich will lay its head and neck flat against the ground as a camouflage (伪装) ploy. Some human onlookers have assumed that the birds' light-coloured heads were actually in the sand.

- How much rainfall does a desert probably receive per year?
  - Less than twelve inches.
  - Less than ten inches.
  - From six to twelve inches.
  - No more than six inches.

2. Which of the following statements is true according to the passage?
- A. As other bigger bills are out of print, the \$100 bill is still the biggest one.
- B. Antarctica with very little rainfall is considered as the largest desert.
- C. Horseradish can be substituted (取代) with wasabi for the similar taste and colour.
- D. An ostrich often uses its head as a weapon to fight against its enemy.
3. Which of the following is the best fit for the blank?
- A. *Ostriches can breathe in the sand.*
- B. *Ostriches have very smart brains.*
- C. *Ostriches bury their heads in the sand.*
- D. *The ostrich's head is the lightest in the world.*

二、阅读下面短文,从短文后的选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项,选项中有两项为多余选项

**Bali resort bans smartphones from poolside to enforce relaxation**

Does a hotel pool even exist if you don't put it on social media? It's a question one Bali resort is encouraging its guests to put to the test by banning phones and mobile devices by the pool, in a bid to encourage people to absorb their surroundings rather than staring at a screen.

<sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ It is an attempt to forcibly free people from the global addiction to checking news, taking photos, updating social media and replying to emails even when on holiday.

The phenomenon of being unable to switch off, or be parted from your phone, has even been given a name: nomophobia, now described as the "21st century disease". <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

Surveys have been performed worldwide. <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ More than 20% of American holiday-makers said they checked their smartphones once per hour during their most recent vacation.

<sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ People look for ways to take a break from their phones, with travel companies and hotels cashing in people's inability to switch off their devices unless forced.

<sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Another recent survey by Travelzoo found that 30% of respondents (调查对象) booked holiday destinations on the basis they would make great material for social media.

- A. Bali resort's no-phone policy is unlikely to be popular with everyone though.
- B. Therefore, tourist attractions have provided various substitutes for smartphones.
- C. However, people find it really challenging to break away from their digital devices.
- D. In Britain, 38% of adults said they thought they were using their smartphones too much.
- E. Social media use has also been linked with depression, particularly among young people.
- F. As a result, there has been an increasing interest in so-called digital detox (脱瘾) holidays.
- G. The enforced "digital detox ruling" in Bali has extended to all smartphones and digital devices.



## Period 6 Extended reading & Project

**教材 P11** In other words, it tries to persuade people to buy a product or service. 换言之,它试图说服人们购买一种产品或服务。

### Point 1 persuade vt. 说服;使信服

#### ★ 解析

persuade sb into/out of doing sth 说服某人做/不做某事

persuade sb (not) to do sth 说服某人做/不做某事

We're trying to persuade manufacturers to sell them here. 我们正在努力劝说制造商在这里销售。

#### ★ 拓展

persuasion *n.* 劝说,说服;说服力

persuasive *adj.* 有说服力的;令人信服的

**教材 P11** As media channels have grown in number and type, so have advertisements. 媒体渠道的数量和形式不断增加,广告也相应发展。

### Point 2 so 引导的倒装句型

#### ★ 解析

so 引导的倒装句型表示对前句所述内容的认同,意为“……也是如此”。结构: so+系动词/助动词/情态动词+另一主语。

I enjoy reading English novels and so does my best friend. 我喜欢读英文小说,我最好的朋友也是如此。

#### ★ 拓展

neither/nor 引导的倒装句前句为否定句,表示“……也不是如此”。

She hasn't gone there, and neither/nor has he. 她没去那儿,他也一样。

**教材 P11** In addition to making people aware of a product or service, a successful advertisement will also create a desire to buy, thus boosting business. 除了让人们知晓一种产品或一项服务,一则成功的广告还能刺激人们的消费欲望,由此促进销售。

### Point 3 ..., thus doing 从而,因此

#### ★ 解析

副词 thus 修饰现在分词作状语,表因果逻辑。

Burke knocked out Byrne, thus becoming champion. 伯克击倒了伯恩,因此成为冠军。

### Point 1

#### 完成句子

- We've \_\_\_\_\_ them into \_\_\_\_\_ (说服……合作) with us.
- He can be very \_\_\_\_\_ (有说服力的).
- He has great powers of \_\_\_\_\_ (说服力).

#### [答案]

- persuaded; cooperating
- persuasive
- persuasion

### Point 2

#### 用 so/neither 填空

- I enjoy reading the book and \_\_\_\_\_ does my wife.
- I never learned to swim and \_\_\_\_\_ did they.
- He hadn't come back before you arrived, and \_\_\_\_\_ had they.

#### [答案]

- so
- neither
- neither

### Point 3

#### 用非谓语形式完成句子

- He rushed to the train station, only \_\_\_\_\_ (find) that the train had

## ★ 拓展

动词不定式 to do 作结果状语,通常表示意料之外的结果。

I reached the station, only to find that my train had already left.  
我到了车站,却发现我要搭乘的火车已经开走了。

**Point 4** *boost vt.* 使增长,使兴旺 *n.* 增长,提高;帮助,激励

## ★ 解析

We need a big win to boost our confidence. 我们需要大胜一场来增强信心。

This is a great boost to the economy. 这对于经济发展是一个巨大的促进。

## ★ 拓展

表示“促进,加强”相关意思的词汇: boost/strengthen/improve/promote/advance/increase/raise。

**教材 P12** In the future, advertising will be even more about understanding individual customers and sending them advertisements that are tailored to specific needs. 在未来,广告活动将会更多地了解客户个体差异,并向他们发送根据其特定需求而量身定制的广告。

**Point 5** *tailor vt.* 专门制作,定做 *n.* 裁缝

## ★ 解析

tailor sth to/for sth/sb 为……专门制作,订做

All our courses can be tailored to the needs of individuals. 我们所有的课程都可以根据个人需要而开设。

## ★ 拓展

tailored *adj.* 订做的,特制的

Customers are increasingly demanding a tailored service. 顾客们对定制服务的需求日益增加。

gone.

2. The train was caught in heavy snow, thus \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ (cause) the delay.

[答案]

1. to find 2. causing

**Point 4**

## 翻译词组

1. 增加出口

2. 推广产品

3. 加固桥梁

4. 升高温度

[答案]

1. boost exports  
2. promote a product  
3. strengthen the bridge  
4. raise the temperature

**Point 5**

## 完成句子

1. The suit was \_\_\_\_\_  
(裁制得好).
2. We can \_\_\_\_\_  
(根据……调整方案) the patient's needs.

[答案]

1. well tailored  
2. tailor the programme to/for





## 进阶 1: 基础巩固

### 一、根据 Extended reading 课文内容选择正确答案

- What does the word “vehicle” in Line 10 mean?  
A. Automobile.                      B. Transport.                      C. Medium.                      D. Service.
- What makes a good slogan aiming to promote sales?  
A. Complicated and beautiful words.                      B. Simple but impressive language.  
C. Easy-to-understand language.                      D. Emotional words and expressions.
- Which of the following examples will NOT be classified into obvious advertising?  
A. A movie’s title character wearing the sponsor’s brand watch.  
B. Cosmetics posters of star endorsement (代言) in shopping malls.  
C. An enterprise naming a famous variety show.  
D. Outdoor billboard of China Mobile along the expressway.
- What might be the author’s attitude towards the future advertising?  
A. Negative.                      B. Indifferent.                      C. Confident.                      D. Curious.

### 二、根据 Extended reading 课文内容填空, 每空一词

Advertisers have thought of many ways to create consumers’ <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to purchase, a common one of which is a <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ slogan. In a bid to make a slogan easy for the audience to <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, advertisers usually use simple but <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ words. If a slogan can <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to the audience’s emotions, it surely will be more effective in <sup>(6)</sup> b\_\_\_\_\_ sales. Another technique for good advertising is a “brand <sup>(7)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_”. Some pop stars are often <sup>(8)</sup> c\_\_\_\_\_ as a product or service spokesperson, because they are popular among <sup>(9)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ customers and therefore may persuade their fans into <sup>(10)</sup> p\_\_\_\_\_ certain products or service.

## 进阶 2: 能力提升

### 一、根据首字母或中文提示填空

- Plants a\_\_\_\_\_ carbon dioxide from the air and water from the soil.
- Traffic reaches its p\_\_\_\_\_ between 6 and 7 in the evening.
- The professor once studied philosophy and \_\_\_\_\_ (心理学) at Cambridge.
- She decided to swim across the English \_\_\_\_\_ (海峡) before she retired.
- The TV play was interrupted by too many a\_\_\_\_\_.
- Stores often use this information to help profile you and your \_\_\_\_\_ (购买).
- “Service with a smile” is the store’s s\_\_\_\_\_.
- Towels of this \_\_\_\_\_ (牌子) are made of pure cotton.
- The theatre gives a 10% d\_\_\_\_\_ to groups of more than ten.
- Pollution control should be t\_\_\_\_\_ to cities and rural areas.



## 二、从方框内选择适当的词组,并用其正确形式填空

get across	brighten up	refer to	be linked with
appeal to	search for	base on	be absorbed in

- Decisions about your children should \_\_\_\_\_ the practical things of everyday life.
- Sean \_\_\_\_\_ what he was doing and didn't even notice that I entered the room.
- The police have started to \_\_\_\_\_ the missing men.
- Your idea won't \_\_\_\_\_ if you use too many technical terms in it.
- He got several birthday presents from his friends, none of them \_\_\_\_\_ him.
- The colour of a car, together with its size and shape, \_\_\_\_\_ safety.
- Why don't we \_\_\_\_\_ this page with some pictures?
- He suggested the person \_\_\_\_\_ be put into prison immediately.

## 进阶3: 综合拓展

## 一、阅读下面短文,从每题所给的A、B、C、D四个选项中选出最佳选项

**Avoid over-sharenting**

“Mum, we have discussed this. You may not post anything without my consent.” These words, posted on Instagram by a 14-year-old child Apple Martin in response to an image of her shared by her mum Gwyneth Paltrow, have sparked again the debate over whether it is ever OK to put pictures of your children online.

Apple's words could become a common complaint as the current generation of children grows up. Many of them will have had digital footprints before they could even walk. About 98 per cent of mothers and 89 per cent of fathers report having uploaded photos of their child to Facebook, according to a recent US study.

Concerns mainly revolve around two issues. First, safety. According to Australia's eSafety Commission, about half of images shared on nasty sites were taken from social media sites. The advice is simple. Don't post photos of your child in a state of undress, and avoid images in which their school uniform or location is identifiable, says UK children's charity, the National Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Children (NSPCC). Avoid posting personal information to minimize risk of identity theft, and ensure that your privacy settings are strict. You might also consider using a pet name for your child online, making it harder to link information to them.

A second issue, as Apple notes, is that of consent. What would your child want to see about themselves online in the future? Videos of their losing temper may be amusing now but could be used by bullies. Given that employers often use social networking sites to search for candidates, it is also worth considering how they might view such information.

Even seemingly innocuous (无恶意的) photos may become a source of conflict in the future,

depending on your child's disposition (性格) or your changing relationship with them.

Of course, certain photos are likely to be more problematic than others. Many parents value the support that online sharing of parental struggles can bring. But our children may not thank us for it.

1. Who would be the target readers of this passage?  
A. Teenagers.                      B. Schools.                      C. Teachers.                      D. Parents.
2. By mentioning Apple Martin in Paragraph 1, the author intends to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. tell us Apple was annoyed with her mother                      B. put on an advertisement for Instagram  
C. introduce the topic of this passage                      D. teach readers how to post pictures online
3. Which of the following statements is NOT true?  
A. A pet name online is beneficial to children.  
B. Innocuous photos can be posted online at will.  
C. Gwyneth uploaded Apple's photos without her permission.  
D. Photos online may give away private information.
4. What might the title of the passage mean?  
A. Parents shouldn't be too strict with their children.  
B. Children shouldn't depend on their parents too much.  
C. Parents shouldn't post endless updates about their children.  
D. Children shouldn't abuse social media.

## 二、阅读下面短文,在空白处填入1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式

Advertising is a means of communication with the users of a product or service. Advertisements are messages paid for by those who send them and these messages <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (intend) to inform or influence people <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ receive them, as <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (define) by the Advertising Association of the UK.

Advertising is always present, though people may not be aware of it. In today's world, advertising uses every possible media <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (get) its message through. It does this <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ television, print (newspapers, magazines, journals, etc.), radio, press, the Internet, direct selling, mailers, contests, sponsorships, posters, clothes, events, colours, sounds, visuals and even people.

The <sup>(6)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (advertise) industry is made up of companies that advertise, agencies that create the advertisements, media that carries the ads, and a host of people like copy <sup>(7)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (edit), visualizers, brand managers, researchers, creative heads and designers who take it the last mile to the customer or receiver. A company that needs to advertise <sup>(8)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and/or its products hires an advertising agency. The company <sup>(9)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (brief) the agency on the brand, its imagery, the ideals and values behind it, and so on. The agencies change the ideas and concepts to create the visuals, text, layouts and themes to communicate with the user. After <sup>(10)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (approve) from the client, the ads go on air, according to the bookings done by the agency's media buying unit.

## 每周巩固 2 Integrated skills—Project

### 一、用括号中所给单词的正确形式填空

1. He stopped and watched with \_\_\_\_\_ (amuse) to see the child so absorbed.
2. Tim's loss of memory is a \_\_\_\_\_ (psychology) problem, rather than a physical one.
3. Movie music can be made \_\_\_\_\_ (memory) because its themes are repeated throughout the film.
4. He offered a \_\_\_\_\_ (persuasion) defense of the theory.
5. This campaign is one of the most successful in the history of \_\_\_\_\_ (advertise) industry.
6. A job \_\_\_\_\_ (place) programme exists to help those who are unemployed.
7. The group is the second largest \_\_\_\_\_ (purchase) of fresh fruit in the US.
8. The workshop provides a very flexible way to build more \_\_\_\_\_ (personal) websites.
9. There are several \_\_\_\_\_ (refer) books which can help you make your choice.
10. Mike now knows how to \_\_\_\_\_ (effect) and efficiently report to his superior.

### 二、根据中文提示完成句子

1. 电影不仅是流行文化的一部分,更是重要的文化传播媒介。

Film is not only \_\_\_\_\_ popular culture, but also \_\_\_\_\_ cultural communication.

2. 我们可以根据病人的需要调整治疗方案,病人可以因此受益。

We can \_\_\_\_\_ the patient's needs, \_\_\_\_\_ them.

3. 作为一种广告和信息交流的常规途径,短信服务在中国被普遍应用。

\_\_\_\_\_ for advertising and information communicating, \_\_\_\_\_ is widely applied in China.

4. 这一举措旨在增加一月预订高峰期的销售量。

The move \_\_\_\_\_ sales during the \_\_\_\_\_ booking month of January.

5. 由那家公司所赞助的赛车比赛如今十分受欢迎。

The car-racing game \_\_\_\_\_ that company has now \_\_\_\_\_.

### 三、阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项

Wise buying is a positive way in which you can make your money go further. The 1 you go about purchasing an article or a service can actually 2 your money or can add to the cost.

Take the 3 example of a hairdryer. If you are buying a hairdryer, you might 4 that you are making the 5 buy if you choose one 6 look you like and which is also the cheapest in price. But when you get it home you may find that it 7 twice as long as a more expensive 8 to dry your hair. The cost of the electricity plus the cost of your time could well 9 your hairdryer the most expensive one of all. So what principles should you 10 when you go out shopping?

If you 11 your home, your car or any valuable possession (私人物品) in excellent

condition, you'll be saving money in the long 12. Before you buy a new appliance (家用电器), talk to someone who owns one. If you can, use it or borrow it to check if it suits your particular 13. Before you buy an expensive 14, or a service, do check the price and 15 is on offer. If possible, choose from three items or three estimates.

- |                  |             |               |             |
|------------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. A. form       | B. fashion  | C. way        | D. method   |
| 2. A. save       | B. preserve | C. raise      | D. offer    |
| 3. A. easy       | B. single   | C. simple     | D. similar  |
| 4. A. convince   | B. accept   | C. examine    | D. think    |
| 5. A. proper     | B. best     | C. reasonable | D. most     |
| 6. A. its        | B. which    | C. whose      | D. what     |
| 7. A. spends     | B. takes    | C. lasts      | D. consumes |
| 8. A. mode       | B. copy     | C. sample     | D. model    |
| 9. A. cause      | B. make     | C. leave      | D. prove    |
| 10. A. adopt     | B. lay      | C. stick      | D. adapt    |
| 11. A. reserve   | B. decorate | C. store      | D. keep     |
| 12. A. run       | B. interval | C. period     | D. time     |
| 13. A. function  | B. purpose  | C. goal       | D. task     |
| 14. A. component | B. element  | C. item       | D. parcel   |
| 15. A. what      | B. which    | C. that       | D. this     |

#### 四、阅读下面短文,在空白处填入1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式

In Asia, messaging platforms are growing rapidly, <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ users both at work and play. The popularity of these platforms is spreading <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (global). It has <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (report) that 76 per cent of employees in some Western countries are using emojis at work.

Written communications can often read as cold and dull. However, messages with emojis, <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ can add feelings, encourage better and <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (frequency) communication.

In any given office, employees can range from age 22 to 70 and beyond, making it a challenge <sup>(6)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (find) common ground in communication style. An easy way is with a chat platform. While the younger generations prefer to communicate visually, for those used to <sup>(7)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (work) with traditional tools like email, it may feel like a learning curve (曲线). The good news is that <sup>(8)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ is simple to learn and can be worth the effort.

There is also the matter of tone. An annoying email will ruin an entire day. Emoji can help communication feel friendlier, and even a serious note can <sup>(9)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (soften) with an encouraging smile.

When your employees begin adding smiling emojis to their business communication, you'll know you have succeeded <sup>(10)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ improving your work culture.

## Unit 2 Sports culture

### Period 1 Welcome to the unit

阅读下面短文,从短文后的选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项,选项中有两项为多余选项

#### Olympic Games

Every four years, the best athletes from countries around the world come together in the spirit of peace and friendship to compete in the Olympic Games. <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ That flame has been brought many thousands of miles by relay runners all the way from Olympia, in Western Greece, where the ceremony began 2,700 years ago.

This simple ceremony, together with the lighting of the torch, is the spark that renews the Olympic flame wherever the games are played. The games symbolized the early Greeks' ideal of man's unity, their vision of peace, and of human perfection. The First Games in recorded history took place in the year 776 BCE. <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ All the Greek city-states participated. <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

The Olympic motto is universally accepted as "Faster, Higher, Stronger". One athlete from the Olympic host country takes an oath (誓言) at the Opening Ceremony on behalf of all the competing athletes, "In the name of all competitors, I promise that we shall take part in these Olympic Games, respecting and obeying the rules which govern them, in the true spirit of sportsmanship, for the glory of sport and the honour of our teams."

In ancient times, winners were crowned with wreaths (花环) of the sacred (神圣的) olive. <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Things have not changed much in this regard. Today, first place winners are awarded gold medals, second place winners, silver, and third place gets the bronze. <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Let us hope that this living experience of peace and friendship between all the peoples of the world that began in Olympia, in ancient Greece, will continue for many centuries to come.

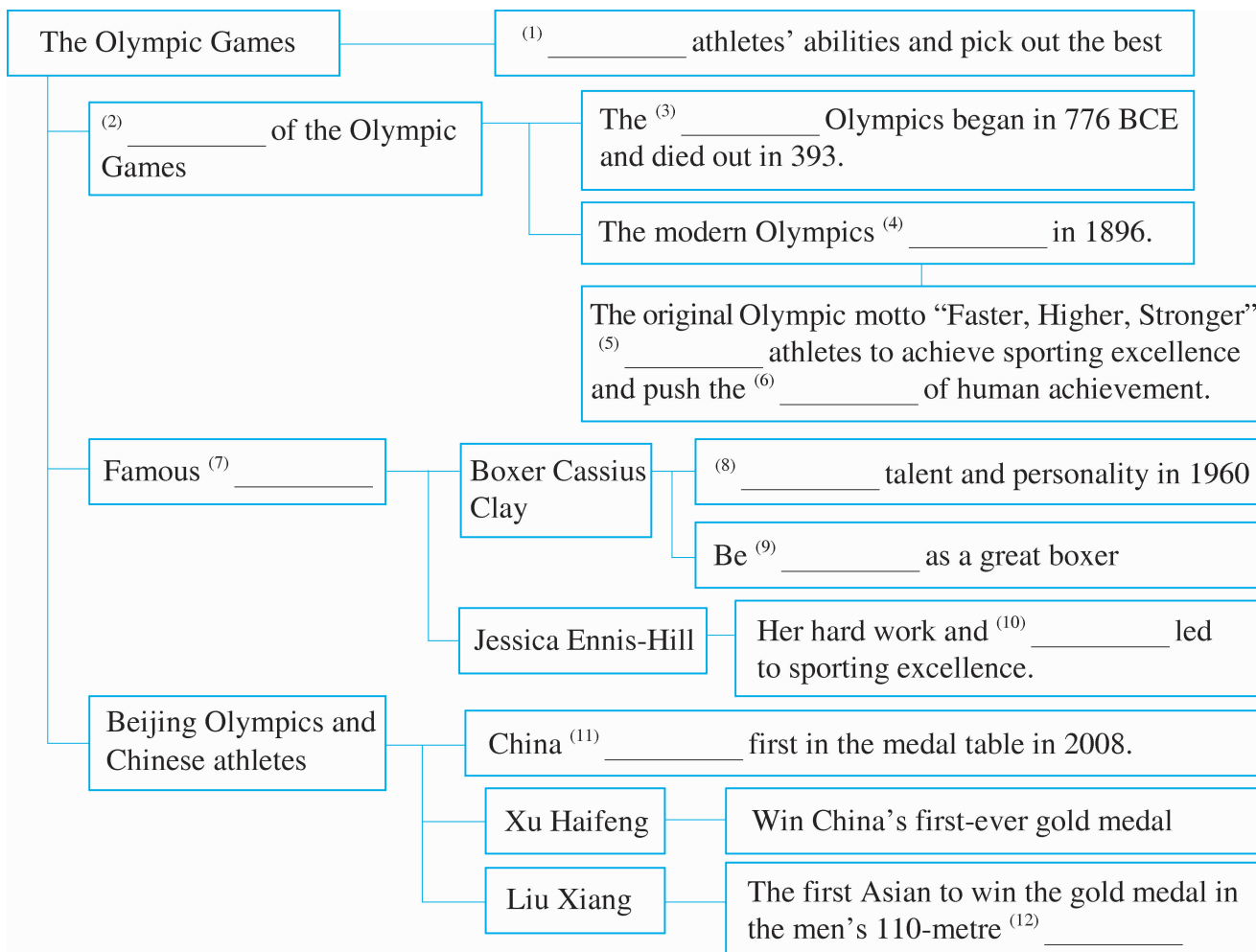
- A. The names of the winners would go down in history.
- B. This was the time of the Western Zhou period in China.
- C. Their names were made known throughout the Greek city-states.
- D. And, as in ancient times, Olympic stars become internationally famous.
- E. The Olympic flame ceremony is held before the opening of the Olympic Games.
- F. With the lighting of the Olympic flame the Games begin—the Olympic spirit kept alive.
- G. States at war with each other would make peace for the successful organization of the Games.



## Period 2 Reading (1)

### 进阶 1: 基础巩固

一、根据 Reading 课文内容完成思维导图, 每空一词



二、根据 Reading 课文内容填空, 每空一词

The Olympic Games are held every four years in the spirit of friendship, <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and fair play. Dating back to 776 BCE, the ancient Olympic Games only allowed male athletes to <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. The modern Olympic Games, first held in 1896, in Athens, were <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ back to life by Pierre de Coubertin, whose dream was to help people of different racial <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to live peacefully together. Many famous athletes contributed a lot to the modern Olympics. Muhammad Ali won a gold medal for America in 1960 and <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the Olympic <sup>(6)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ at the opening ceremony of the 1996 Atlanta Olympic Games. Jessica Ennis-Hill, a former <sup>(7)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and field athlete from the UK, should also be <sup>(8)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, whose <sup>(9)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ good performance helped her win two medals. At the 1984 Los Angeles Olympics, Chinese athlete Xu Haifeng won a gold medal, which started an upward <sup>(10)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ for Chinese sport.

## 进阶 2: 综合拓展

阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳选项

Most young people enjoy some form of physical activity. It may be walking, cycling or swimming. It may be a game of some kind—football, golf, or tennis. It may be mountaineering.

Those who have a passion for climbing high and difficult mountains are often looked upon with astonishment. Why are men and women willing to suffer any hardship, and to take risks on high mountains? This astonishment is caused probably by the difference between mountaineering and other forms of activity to which men give their leisure.

Mountaineering is a sport and not a game. There are no man-made rules, as there are for such games as golf and football. There are, of course, rules of a different kind which it would be dangerous to ignore, but it is this freedom from man-made rules that makes mountaineering attractive to many people. Those who climb mountains are free to use their own methods.

If we compare mountaineering and other more familiar sports, we might think that one big difference is that mountaineering is not a “team game”. We should be mistaken in this. There are, it is true, no “matches” between “teams” of climbers, but when climbers are on a rock face linked by a rope on which their lives may depend, there is obvious teamwork.

The mountain climber knows that he may have to fight forces that are stronger and more powerful than man. He has to fight the forces of nature. His sport requires high mental and physical qualities.

A mountain climber continues to improve in skill year after year. A skier is probably past his best by the age of thirty, and most international tennis champions are in their early twenties. But it is not unusual for a man of fifty or sixty to climb the highest mountains in the Alps. They may take more time than younger men, but they probably climb with more skill and less waste of efforts, and they certainly experience equal enjoyment.

- One of the differences between a sport and a game is about \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. risks                                      B. rules                                      C. hardship                                      D. participants
- Mountaineering can be called a team sport because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. it is an Olympic event  
B. teams compete against each other  
C. mountaineers' fates are linked with each other while climbing  
D. there are several climbers in each team
- Mountaineers compete against \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. forces of nature                                      B. team members  
C. other teams                                      D. international standards
- What quality of a mountain climber improves with age?  
A. Energy.                                      B. Leadership.                                      C. Endurance.                                      D. Skill.





## Period 3 Reading (2)

**教材 P16** Every four years, thousands of highly trained and talented athletes gather together in the spirit of friendship, solidarity and fair play, ready to test their abilities against each other in the hope of being recognized as the best of the best. 每四年,就有成千上万名训练有素、才华横溢的运动员聚集在一起,他们本着友谊、团结和公平竞争的精神准备互相较量,希望能成为举世公认的顶尖选手。

### Point 1 fair play 按规则比赛;公平办事

#### ★ 解析

a player admired for his sense of fair play 因公正比赛而受人尊敬的球员

#### ★ 拓展

a fair deal/price/question 公平交易/公道的价格/恰当的问题

A fair number of people came along. 有相当多的人来了。

There's a fair chance that we might win this time. 这次我们可能胜算很大。

**教材 P16** They competed in such events as boxing, running and the long jump. 他们参加这样的一些比赛项目,如拳击、跑步、跳远。

### Point 2 compete vi. 参加比赛;竞争

#### ★ 解析

He's hoping to compete in the London Marathon. 他期盼着参加伦敦马拉松比赛。

Several companies are competing for the contract. 为得到那项合同,几家公司正在竞争。

#### ★ 拓展

competitive *adj.* 竞争的;求胜心切的

competitively *adv.* 有竞争力地;好竞争地

competent *adj.* 足以胜任的;有能力的

competition *n.* 竞争;比赛,竞赛

competitor *n.* 竞争者,对手

competence *n.* 能力;胜任

**教材 P16** He came to public attention during the 1960 Rome Olympics, when he won the light heavyweight gold medal for the USA, demonstrating great talent and personality in the process. 他在1960年罗马奥运会上引起了公众的关注,当时,他为美国赢得了轻量级拳击金牌,并在这一过程中展现了非凡的天赋与优秀的品性。

### Point 1

#### 完成句子

- All the competitors agree to observe the spirit of \_\_\_\_\_ (公平竞争).
- I've still got \_\_\_\_\_ (很多工作) left to do.

#### [答案]

- fair play
- a fair amount of work

### Point 2

#### 完成词组

- \_\_\_\_\_ in solving problems 解决问题的能力
- \_\_\_\_\_ sport 竞技体育
- win a \_\_\_\_\_ 赢得比赛
- a \_\_\_\_\_ teacher 一名称职的教师
- \_\_\_\_\_ in foreign markets 在国外市场竞争

#### [答案]

- competence
- competitive
- competition
- competent
- compete



**Point 3 demonstrate vt.** 表现;证实;示范 **vi.** 游行示威

## ★ 解析

demonstrate sth to sb 向某人证明某事

It has been demonstrated that 经证实

demonstrate against/in favour of sth 举行反对/支持……的游行

You need to demonstrate more self-control. 你应该表现出更强的自制力。

These results demonstrate convincingly that our campaign is working. 这些结果有力地证明,我们的运动正在发挥作用。

Her job involves demonstrating new educational software. 她的工作包括演示新的教学软件。

## ★ 拓展

demonstration *n.* 示范;证明;示威游行

demonstrator *n.* 示威者;论证者

She gave us a demonstration of the machine to show us how it worked. 她为我们做了示范来说明那台机器的用法。

**Point 4** 现在分词作伴随状语

## ★ 解析

该句中的 *demonstrating great talent and personality in the process* 是现在分词作伴随状语,其逻辑主语是主句的主语 *He*。

Hearing the news, they all danced for joy. (现在分词作原因状语)

Having arrived at the decision, they immediately set to work. (现在分词的完成时作时间状语)

## ★ 拓展

分词或分词短语(现在分词或过去分词)作状语,可以表示时间、原因、结果、条件、让步、方式等,现在分词表示主动意义,过去分词表示被动意义,已完成的动作或所处的状态。

A bomb exploded at the hotel yesterday, killing seven people. (现在分词作结果状语)

Seen from the hill, the city looks magnificent. (过去分词作方式状语)

**Point 3**

## 完成句子

1. They are anxious to \_\_\_\_\_ (证明) the voters that they have practical policies.
2. Angry workers arrived in Brussels yesterday to \_\_\_\_\_ (游行反对) possible cuts in salary.
3. We were given a brief \_\_\_\_\_ (演示) of the computer's functions.

## [答案]

1. demonstrate to
2. demonstrate against
3. demonstration

**Point 4**

## 完成句子

1. \_\_\_\_\_ (teach) by mistakes and setbacks, we have become wiser.
2. Their car was caught in a traffic jam, thus \_\_\_\_\_ (cause) the delay.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ (exercise) every morning, you will improve your health.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ (not meet) him, I don't know what he is like.

## [答案]

1. Taught
2. causing
3. Exercising
4. Not having met

**教材 P17** Afterwards, this young man proceeded to become the world heavyweight champion in 1964, and later changed his name to the one we all know—Muhammad Ali. 后来,这个年轻人在 1964 年成为了世界重量级拳击冠军,之后把名字改成了我们耳熟能详的穆罕默德·阿里。

**Point 5** *proceed vi.* 接着做,继而做;继续从事(进行);行进,前往

★ 解析

proceed to do sth (做完某事之后) 接着(做另一件事)

proceed with sth 继续进行某行动

He proceeded to tell me of my birth. 他接着给我讲了我的出生。

We're not sure whether we still want to proceed with the sale. 我们不确定是否还要继续减价促销。

Passengers for Rome should proceed to Gate 32 for boarding. 前往罗马的旅客,请到 32 号登机口登机。

★ 拓展

proceed against sb 起诉(某人)

**教材 P17** In an interview she revealed that the secret of her consistent good performance was the training that she never missed. 在一次采访中,她透露自己一贯表现出色的秘诀是她从未错过的训练。

**Point 6** *consistent adj.* 一致的,始终如一的;连续的

★ 解析

We must be consistent in applying the rules. 我们在实施这些规则时必须保持一致。

The results are entirely consistent with our earlier research. 这些结果与我们早些时候的研究完全吻合。

★ 拓展

consist in 存在于;在于 consist of 由……组成

The beauty of the city consists in its magnificent buildings. 这座城市的美就在于它那些宏伟的建筑。

The committee consists of ten members. 委员会由十人组成。

**Point 5**

完成句子

1. Shall we \_\_\_\_\_ (继续) the plan as agreed?
2. We shall \_\_\_\_\_ (起诉) him for theft.
3. Having said she wasn't hungry, she then \_\_\_\_\_ (接着点了) a three-course meal.

[答案]

1. proceed with
2. proceed against
3. proceeded to order

**Point 6**

完成句子

1. True education does not \_\_\_\_\_ (在于) simply being taught facts.
2. Their diet \_\_\_\_\_ (主要由……组成) vegetables.
3. She's not very \_\_\_\_\_ (始终如一的) the way she treats her children.
4. The results \_\_\_\_\_ (与……相一致) the evidence.

[答案]

1. consist in
2. consists largely of
3. consistent in
4. are consistent with

## 进阶 1: 基础巩固

## 一、根据句意写出画线单词的词性及含义

1. The report ranks the US 20th out of 22 advanced nations. \_\_\_\_\_

She was not used to mixing with people of high social rank. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Thomas has not forgotten his humble origins. \_\_\_\_\_

He has been studying theories about the origin of life. \_\_\_\_\_

3. He started to applaud and the others joined in. \_\_\_\_\_

He should be applauded for his courage. \_\_\_\_\_

## 二、根据首字母或中文提示填空

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ (团结) among China's various nationalities is as firm as a rock.

2. Couples of the same r \_\_\_\_\_ origin are more likely to stay together for ten years or longer in a marriage, the report found.

3. I have spent my life getting to know \_\_\_\_\_ (多种多样的) literatures of different dynasties.

4. Only by j \_\_\_\_\_ efforts can parents and children bridge the generation gap between them.

5. How do you \_\_\_\_\_ (激励) people to work hard and efficiently?

6. The judge was praised for his courage and \_\_\_\_\_ (仁慈).

7. There is a growing t \_\_\_\_\_ towards later retirement.

8. In America, presidential e \_\_\_\_\_ are held every four years.

9. I have great \_\_\_\_\_ (信心) in you—I know you'll do well.

10. She never achieved her a \_\_\_\_\_ of becoming a famous writer.

11. The number on the card should be \_\_\_\_\_ (完全同样的) with the one on the chequebook.

12. Many caged birds live longer than their f \_\_\_\_\_ in the wild.

13. The game was \_\_\_\_\_ (转播) by satellite to audiences all over the world.

14. His sudden departure d \_\_\_\_\_ how unreliable he was.

15. Until these conditions are met, we cannot \_\_\_\_\_ (继续) with the project.

## 三、从方框内选择适当的词组,并用其正确形式填空

be recognized as   die out   give birth to   compete in   in the spirit of

1. In ancient times, women were not allowed to \_\_\_\_\_ the Olympics.

2. I came to attend this conference \_\_\_\_\_ responsibility, trust and cooperation.

3. Laws should be passed to protect pandas. Otherwise, they are certain to \_\_\_\_\_.

4. These doctors are quite confident that Daisy will \_\_\_\_\_ a healthy baby.

5. The hospital \_\_\_\_\_ a centre of excellence in research and teaching.



## 进阶 2: 能力提升

### 一、同义句转换

1. The athletes are ready to test their abilities against each other in the hope of being recognized as the best of the best.

The athletes are willing to \_\_\_\_\_ each other, \_\_\_\_\_ to be recognized as the best of the best.

2. In the 2008 Beijing Olympics, China ranked first in the medal table.

The \_\_\_\_\_ won by China in the 2008 Beijing Olympics \_\_\_\_\_ in the world.

3. In 1909 an English newspaper offered £1,000 to the first man who could fly across the English Channel in an plane.

In 1909 an English newspaper offered £1,000 to the first man \_\_\_\_\_ the English Channel \_\_\_\_\_.

4. After the policeman noted down our names and addresses, he dismissed us.

\_\_\_\_\_ our names and addresses, the policeman dismissed us.

5. The jailer took up where he stopped a moment ago, reading the usual copy of the letter to the prisoner.

The jailer \_\_\_\_\_ the usual copy of the letter to the prisoner from where he stopped a moment ago.

6. In the past century, people from diverse backgrounds have worked together to help realize Coubertin's dream.

For over a century, people from diverse backgrounds \_\_\_\_\_ help realize Coubertin's dream.

### 二、根据中文提示完成句子

1. 运动员们不断尝试突破人类成就的极限,为全世界人们带来欢乐。

Athletes \_\_\_\_\_ across the world with their attempts to \_\_\_\_\_.

2. 万众瞩目的冬季奥运会即将举行,您认为谁将在开幕式点燃奥运火炬?

The much-anticipated Winter Olympic Games is around the corner. Who do you think will \_\_\_\_\_?

3. 现代医学的全部知识与技术也不能使他起死回生。

All knowledge and techniques of modern medicine cannot \_\_\_\_\_.

4. 近年来,全球突发事件频发,突发事件的应对与管理已引起公众的关注。

In recent years, emergencies burst all over the world, and emergency response and management \_\_\_\_\_.

5. 政府呼吁年轻人投身于社会服务。

The government \_\_\_\_\_ social services.

6. 购物者聚集在特卖会,希望淘到便宜货。

Shoppers crowded in the sales \_\_\_\_\_ finding a bargain.

### 三、微写作

根据所提供的主题句,写一个 60 词左右的完整段落,注意使用合适的连接词,使段落层次鲜明、语意连贯。

The fighting spirit of Olympic athletes inspires us teenagers. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

### 进阶 3: 综合拓展

一、阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项

The yearly marathon in my town usually happened during a heat wave. My job was to follow behind the runners in an ambulance in case any of them needed   1   attention.

“We’re supposed to stay behind the   2   runner, so take it slowly,” I said to the driver, Doug, as the race started.

The front-runners started to   3   and then my eyes were   4   to the woman in blue silk running shorts and a loose white T-shirt.

We knew we were already watching our “last runner”. Her legs were so crippled (残疾的) that it seemed almost impossible for her to be able to walk,   5   alone run a marathon.

Doug and I   6   in silence as she slowly moved forward.   7  , she was the only runner left in sight.   8   streamed down my face when I watched with respect as she pushed forward with great   9   through the last miles.

When the finishing line came into sight, rubbish   10   everywhere and the crowds had long gone home. Yet, standing straight and ever so proud   11   a lone man. He was   12   one end of a ribbon (缎带) of crepe paper (皱纹纸)   13   to a post. She slowly crossed through, leaving both ends of the paper fluttering behind her.

I do not know this woman’s   14  , but that day she became part of my life—a part I often depend on. For her, finishing what she had set out to do mattered most. Every time I think things are too   15  , I think of the last runner. Then I realize how easy the task before me really is.



- |                 |                  |                |            |
|-----------------|------------------|----------------|------------|
| 1. A. physical  | B. mental        | C. spiritual   | D. medical |
| 2. A. first     | B. best          | C. only        | D. last    |
| 3. A. run       | B. separate      | C. disappear   | D. appear  |
| 4. A. drawn     | B. thrown        | C. fixed       | D. caught  |
| 5. A. leave     | B. let           | C. speak       | D. take    |
| 6. A. stared    | B. drove         | C. observed    | D. watched |
| 7. A. Finally   | B. Unluckily     | C. Naturally   | D. Quickly |
| 8. A. Sweat     | B. Liquid        | C. Tears       | D. Water   |
| 9. A. pain      | B. determination | C. strength    | D. desire  |
| 10. A. lied     | B. lain          | C. lay         | D. laid    |
| 11. A. stood    | B. waited        | C. came        | D. had     |
| 12. A. helping  | B. catching      | C. trying      | D. holding |
| 13. A. tied     | B. kept          | C. connected   | D. led     |
| 14. A. identity | B. character     | C. name        | D. role    |
| 15. A. easy     | B. difficult     | C. comfortable | D. hopeful |

## 二、阅读下面短文,在空白处填入1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式

Among various events organized by our company, the marathon impresses me most. The most <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (forget) scene happened in my first year of work, when a silver-haired man in his <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (eighty) walked slowly towards the finishing line accompanied by two nurses. It was at that moment <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ I was deeply moved. I realized what marathon spirit stands for—perseverance, willpower and self-proving.

I took part in the Women's Half Marathon in Washington, DC this year. It was my first half marathon. The moment I passed over the bridge, <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (run) from the opposite direction gave me high fives with an unspoken understanding, <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (allow) me to forget exhaustion and regain energy instantly.

There were many times <sup>(6)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ I wanted to quit. But runners around me, as well as the crowd along the road, always encouraged me. In the last 500 metres, feeling sick in the stomach because of the cold wind, I slowed my pace and intended <sup>(7)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (walk). A woman shouted to me, "Hey, you're almost there. Come on, girl! You're doing a great job." I started to run again powered by those words. And finally I made <sup>(8)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

Running is flesh-and-blood and not just mechanical movements. Thus, I can't help but <sup>(9)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (become) more considerate towards runners when organizing races. I wish to create a far <sup>(10)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (favourable) running environment, offer better services and help to achieve the results they expect.

## Period 4 Grammar and usage

### 过去进行时与过去完成时的被动语态

#### 一、过去进行时的被动语态

1. 过去进行时的被动语态表示过去某一特定时间某事正在被做。例如：

He said that the man was being operated on.

He told me that a new station was being built.

2. 过去进行时的被动语态构成形式为：was/were being done。例如：

They were planting trees at this time yesterday. (主动语态)

Trees were being planted by them at this time yesterday. (过去进行时的被动语态)

- (1) 过去进行时的被动语态的肯定式为：was/were being done。例如：

Three blondes were being trained to become detectives by a policeman.

Another bridge was being built over the Changjiang River then.

- (2) 过去进行时的被动语态的否定式为：was/were not being done。例如：

The movie star wasn't being stalked by a fan.

- (3) 过去进行时的被动语态的一般疑问句需将 was/were 提到主语的前面，回答用 yes 或 no。

例如：

Was a new library being put up in their school just then?

Yes, it was. / No, it wasn't.

- (4) 过去进行时的被动语态的特殊疑问句为：特殊疑问词+was/were+(主语+)being done?

例如：

What was being done to the machine?

He had no idea what was being done to his family.

3. 过去进行时的被动语态的用法。

- (1) 过去进行时的被动语态表示过去正在进行的被动动作。

He was being interviewed by a senior manager of a major company then.

The electricity was cut off while the film was being shown.

- (2) 过去进行时的被动语态一般不与表示一段时间的状态语或表示次数的状态语连用，这时需要用完成时的被动语态。例如：

The watch was being repaired twice.

改为：The watch had been repaired twice.

The house over there was being built for two months by then.

改为：The house over there had been built for two months by then.

- (3) 少数及物动词的进行时表示按计划、安排将要承受某个动作。例如：

He told me some rock music was being played next.

A party was being held that night.





## 二、过去完成时的被动语态

1. 过去完成时表示在过去某一时刻或某一动作之前发生的动作或状态,句中常用 by、before、until、when 等词引导时间状语,由“had+过去分词”构成。

过去完成时的被动语态有以下三种形式。

- (1) 肯定结构: 主语+had been done+其他成分。

Lots of damages had been caused by continuous floods.

- (2) 否定结构: 主语+had not been done+其他成分。

The work had not been done very thoroughly.

- (3) 一般疑问句结构: Had+主语+been done+其他成分?

Had the house been cleaned before guests arrived?

- (4) 特殊疑问结构: 特殊疑问词+had+(主语+) been done+其他成分?

What had the woman been robbed of before she came here?

2. 过去完成时的被动语态常用于以下三种情况。

- (1) 表示过去某一时间以前已经完成的动作,常与 by、before 等引导的时间状语连用。

By the time he got to the company, the job had been finished.

The classroom hadn't been cleaned before the teacher came.

How many buildings had been destroyed when the earthquake ended?

- (2) 根据语意可以判断出动作先后的被动语态,用过去完成时。

As the assignment had been done, he went on to search the Internet.

He did what he had been told to.

注意: 当从句由 after、before、when 或 as soon as 引导时,主句和从句都可以用一般过去时。

When he arrived, he called her.

They locked the door before they left.

- (3) 在 told、said、knew、heard、thought 等动词之后的宾语从句中,若表示过去某一被动动作时,用过去完成时。

They said the production costs had been reduced.

The girl was reminded that her homework had not been handed in.

The media reported more than 1,000 people had been killed in the earthquake.

## 三、过去完成时与现在完成时的被动语态用法区别

现在完成时的被动语态表示相对于现在来说已被完成的动作,过去完成时的被动语态表示相对于过去某一时刻来说已被完成的动作,即“过去的过去”。例如:

This polluted river has been cleaned.

解析: 到现在为止这条河流已被净化。

This part of the seabed has been explored many times.

解析: 到现在为止海底已经被探索多次。

Some kinds of special equipment for space travel have been developed over the last few years.

解析：在到现在为止的过去几年中，几种宇航专用设备已经被研制出来。

He said this book had been translated into Japanese.

解析：到他说话时为止这本书已被翻译成日语。

Five units of this textbook had been studied by the end of last month.

解析：到上个月月底为止，已经学完这本书的五个单元。

By the time he died in 2016, Ali had been recognized as one of the greatest boxers of all time.

解析：直到 2016 年去世，阿里一直都是公认的最伟大的拳击手之一。

## 进阶 1：基础巩固

### 一、根据首字母或中文提示填空

- I've been getting these pains in my \_\_\_\_\_ (胸部).
- There is a l\_\_\_\_\_ to the amount of pain we can bear.
- About 95 per cent of those who cast their votes approve the new \_\_\_\_\_ (宪法).
- It is said that the tournament is open to both a\_\_\_\_\_ and professionals.
- The singer went down the stage, tripped over something, and twisted his a\_\_\_\_\_.
- As the last trace of colour disappeared from her \_\_\_\_\_ (面颊), she gave her last breath.
- OK, good luck on your tests, and we'll arrange a review s\_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.
- These banks are state-owned and their \_\_\_\_\_ (董事长) are appointed by the government.
- Since the end of the war, they have been \_\_\_\_\_ (逐渐地) pulling themselves out of poverty.
- Most of the runners in the London M\_\_\_\_\_ are raising money for charity.

### 二、把下列句子的主动语态改为被动语态

- People were saving much parking space in cities by taking public vehicles.

---

- This city had built two expressways by the end of last year.

---

- People had not explored outer space before 1957.

---

- The secretary had sent the plan to the manager before the meeting started.

---

- My neighbour was checking my computer at 10 last night.

---

- Visitors were feeding the tiger some nice meat at this time yesterday.

---



### 三、用括号中所给单词的正确形式填空

- In the south part of Shenzhen, many skyscrapers \_\_\_\_\_ (build) this time last year.
- My car \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) by my son at 10 yesterday morning.
- The old clock \_\_\_\_\_ (take) apart several times by my little son before he attended school.
- Instructions \_\_\_\_\_ (not send) to him by phone before he arrived.
- Some nice cakes \_\_\_\_\_ (make) by him from 7 to 10 last night.
- He then was in his twenties, and everything \_\_\_\_\_ (renew).
- As the train service \_\_\_\_\_ (suspend), thousands of people had to wait for days at the station.
- \_\_\_\_\_ a new teaching building \_\_\_\_\_ (put) up in our school just then?
- It was the summer of 1936 and the Olympic Games \_\_\_\_\_ (hold) in Berlin.
- The method in this paper \_\_\_\_\_ (not demonstrate) by case study before it was published.

## 进阶 2: 能力提升

### 一、同义句转换

- Despite my lack of running experience, I agreed to take part in the city marathon.  
Though \_\_\_\_\_ running experience, I agreed to \_\_\_\_\_ the city marathon.
- I was happy to learn that a lot of money had been raised for charity.  
\_\_\_\_\_ that \_\_\_\_\_ money had been \_\_\_\_\_ for charity, I felt happy.
- I took a step back, and looked at the scene with satisfaction.  
\_\_\_\_\_, I looked at the scene, \_\_\_\_\_.
- Not having made adequate preparations, they thought it better to hold the conference next week.  
Since adequate preparations \_\_\_\_\_, they thought it better to hold the conference next week.

### 二、根据中文提示完成句子

- By the time the car was sold to a second-hand market, it \_\_\_\_\_ (已经行驶了 200 千米).
- I heard the travellers willing to pay higher \_\_\_\_\_ (已经被带到一座大旅馆去了).

3. By the end of last year, thousands of new energy vehicles \_\_\_\_\_ (被……生产).
4. Much information \_\_\_\_\_ (已被送回地球) since the spacemen began their exploration on the Moon.
5. Huawei smartphones \_\_\_\_\_ (已被广泛使用) before 2020.
6. They had a tiring trip yesterday because the road \_\_\_\_\_ (在为即将到来的半程马拉松修路).
7. On the train bound to London, Caroline had the sensation that \_\_\_\_\_ (自己被注视着).
8. \_\_\_\_\_ (许多汽车正被手工制作) at the turn of the century and were much too expensive for all but the wealthy.

### 三、阅读下面短文,在空白处填入 1 个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式

<sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (origin) in 776 BCE, the Olympic Games got its name because it was in Olympia, Greece <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the Games were held. The Olympic Games are held every four years on <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ regular basis. There are two main sets of Games—the Winter and the Summer Olympics. The Winter Olympics are usually held two years <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the Summer Games. Only athletes who have reached the agreed standard for their event will be admitted as <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (compete). At first, only the Greek cities could join in and they used to compete against each other just for the honour of winning. No other countries could join in, <sup>(6)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ could slaves or women! However, nowadays any country can take part if their athletes are good enough. Women are not only allowed, but play a very important role. The motto of the Olympics is “Faster, Higher and Stronger.” It is a great <sup>(7)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (responsible) as well as a great honour to be chosen <sup>(8)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (host) the Olympic Games. There is as much competition among countries to host the Olympics as to win Olympic medals. I was told that the 29th Olympics <sup>(9)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (hold) successfully in Beijing, and China had seized world number one <sup>(10)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (rank) on the medal table, which is a great honour for the Chinese.

### 进阶 3: 综合拓展

阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项

I used to hate being called upon in class mainly because I didn't like attention drawn to myself. And unless 1 assigned (指定) a seat by the teacher, I always 2 to sit at the back of the classroom.

All this changed after I 3 a sports team. It began when a teacher suggested I try out for the

basketball team. At first I thought it was a crazy 4 because I didn't have a good sense of balance, nor did I have the ability to keep pace with the others on the team and they would 5 me. But for the teacher who kept insisting on my "going for it", I wouldn't have decided to give a try.

Getting up the courage to go to the tryouts was only the 6 of it! When I first started attending the practice 7, I didn't even know the rules of the game, much 8 what I was doing. Sometimes I was in total 9 and took a shot at the wrong direction—which made me feel really awkward. Fortunately, I wasn't the only one "new" at the game, so I decided to concentrate on learning the game, do my best at each practice session, and not be too 10 on myself for the things I didn't know "just yet".

I practised and practised. Soon I knew the 11 and the "moves". Being part of a team was fun and motivating. Very soon the competitive 12 in me was winning over my lack of confidence. With time, I learned how to play and made friends in the 13—friends who respected my efforts to work hard and be a team player. I never had so much fun!

With my 14 self-confidence comes more praise from teachers and classmates. I have gone from "hiding" in the back of the classroom and not wanting to 15 attention to myself, to raising my hand—even when I sometimes wasn't sure of the answer. Now I have more self-confidence in myself.

- |                  |                 |                  |               |
|------------------|-----------------|------------------|---------------|
| 1. A. as         | B. otherwise    | C. if            | D. still      |
| 2. A. hoped      | B. proceeded    | C. preferred     | D. meant      |
| 3. A. attended   | B. participated | C. took part     | D. joined     |
| 4. A. idea       | B. plan         | C. belief        | D. saying     |
| 5. A. tease      | B. applaud      | C. limit         | D. motivate   |
| 6. A. point      | B. rest         | C. half          | D. basis      |
| 7. A. courses    | B. curricula    | C. sessions      | D. sections   |
| 8. A. further    | B. later        | C. worse         | D. less       |
| 9. A. commitment | B. confusion    | C. embarrassment | D. motivation |
| 10. A. serious   | B. hard         | C. ambitious     | D. urgent     |
| 11. A. steps     | B. orders       | C. games         | D. rules      |
| 12. A. role      | B. mind         | C. value         | D. part       |
| 13. A. operation | B. situation    | C. process       | D. movement   |
| 14. A. improved  | B. expressed    | C. preserved     | D. recognized |
| 15. A. pay       | B. call         | C. devote        | D. turn       |

## 每周巩固 1 Welcome to the unit—Grammar and usage

### 一、用括号中所给单词的正确形式填空

1. A back injury prevented active \_\_\_\_\_ (participate) in any sports for a while.
2. With high \_\_\_\_\_ (motivate) and enthusiasm, we are optimistic about our future.
3. This is a clear \_\_\_\_\_ (demonstrate) of how technology has changed our life.
4. They \_\_\_\_\_ (applause) politely to greet the hero yesterday.
5. He has always been \_\_\_\_\_ (ambition) and fiercely competitive.
6. We can't promise to publish all replies because of space \_\_\_\_\_ (limit).
7. Losing weight is a slow, gradual \_\_\_\_\_ (proceed).
8. Happiness does not \_\_\_\_\_ (consistent) in how many possessions you own.
9. In 2008, John was \_\_\_\_\_ (election) as one of the top ten football athletes.
10. You will lose your \_\_\_\_\_ (identical) when you join the army.
11. We should think about what \_\_\_\_\_ (constitution) a family.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ (compete) makes you better, even if the \_\_\_\_\_ (compete) wins.

### 二、从方框内选择适当的词组,并用其正确形式填空

build bridges between	live side by side	call on	clear up
bring joy and excitement to	be identical to	deserve applause	
devote oneself to	raise money for	take a step back	

1. Alice told me her father \_\_\_\_\_ scientific research.
2. Every year the charity groups \_\_\_\_\_ unfortunate people.
3. China and neighbouring countries will \_\_\_\_\_ in peace and prosperity.
4. There on the book's cover was a beagle (猎犬) which \_\_\_\_\_ my dog.
5. For me it is the right time to \_\_\_\_\_, take a deep breath and reflect.
6. I think we should figure out some ways to stop people from polluting the river and \_\_\_\_\_ them to fight against pollution.
7. There should be someone to whom you can turn for any advice or to \_\_\_\_\_ any problems.
8. This will not only \_\_\_\_\_ people, but also create a more pleasant surprise for visitors.
9. Cultural exchange is a way of \_\_\_\_\_ countries.
10. They all \_\_\_\_\_ because they had overcome numerous barriers before they could finally take part in that big gathering.

## 三、阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项

Some people got off the bus. New faces stepped on. I was sitting there looking at the driver with respect. A thought 1 that I should tell him how much I 2 seeing his kindness, especially to the blind woman.

“No, that’s kind of random,” a voice inside my head told me, as my 3 thought came up with all sorts of excuses. “You’re supposed to go out of the back door anyway, so you won’t have a 4 to go up and say anything to the bus driver.”

I thought about it again and then I thought about all the small and 5 moments of kindness I have met in this community. There was no turning back. As the bus 6 my stop, I walked to the 7 of the bus. “Thank you so much for your kindness to that 8 woman. It was really nice to see,” I offered. “Well, that’s really nice to hear. Thank you so much! It’s nice to know that someone 9. My brother is deaf. So I have a special soft spot for people with 10,” he explained.

“Well, I really appreciated seeing it. It was 11 and made my day,” I told him, smiling brightly. “Thank you. That really makes my day,” he replied, with a 12 smile.

We talked a little more, and any wave of doubt completely 13. I stepped off the bus a little later in relief. And it 14 me of a line I once came across: feeling gratitude and not expressing it is like wrapping a present and not giving it.

Gratitude to have met such memorable stories of everyday 15, and to be in contact with beautiful souls encourages me to speak out my inner voice in times of beauty.

- |                     |                  |               |                |
|---------------------|------------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. took up       | B. pondered over | C. popped up  | D. turned out  |
| 2. A. appreciated   | B. advised       | C. imagined   | D. reflected   |
| 3. A. abstract      | B. doubtful      | C. awkward    | D. believable  |
| 4. A. course        | B. chance        | C. routine    | D. sympathy    |
| 5. A. urgent        | B. tiresome      | C. moving     | D. depressive  |
| 6. A. approached    | B. departed      | C. passed     | D. missed      |
| 7. A. back          | B. front         | C. middle     | D. side        |
| 8. A. deaf          | B. lame          | C. blind      | D. elderly     |
| 9. A. noticed       | B. ignored       | C. adopted    | D. heard       |
| 10. A. skills       | B. disabilities  | C. morals     | D. diseases    |
| 11. A. discouraging | B. awful         | C. puzzling   | D. inspiring   |
| 12. A. wide         | B. reluctant     | C. bare       | D. bitter      |
| 13. A. flooded      | B. mixed         | C. stopped by | D. melted away |
| 14. A. warned       | B. thought       | C. reminded   | D. recalled    |
| 15. A. justice      | B. honesty       | C. devotion   | D. kindness    |



## Period 5 Integrated skills

### 进阶 1: 基础巩固

#### 一、根据首字母或中文提示填空

1. Even if you are not a c \_\_\_\_\_, not rich or famous, you can do something to help make this world a better place.
2. Organ donation to strangers is considered a(n) u \_\_\_\_\_ act.
3. It's difficult to preserve your \_\_\_\_\_ (自尊) when you have no job and no home.
4. They also taught me the importance of humour and \_\_\_\_\_ (谦逊) in the way they motivated students.
5. His chest pains get worse when he b \_\_\_\_\_ over or lies down.
6. Letters of complaint continue to p \_\_\_\_\_ in.
7. She moves with the natural \_\_\_\_\_ (高雅) of a ballerina (芭蕾舞女演员).
8. I've learnt from \_\_\_\_\_ (心酸的) experience not to trust what he says.
9. The house has now been restored to its former \_\_\_\_\_ (荣耀).
10. The worst thing you can do is underestimate an o \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 二、用括号中所给动词的正确形式填空

1. I heard the news that I \_\_\_\_\_ (award) the Nobel Peace Prize on the radio one evening.
2. The plane \_\_\_\_\_ (crash) in an area of dense jungle. There were no survivors.
3. Colorado rose to the occasion with four players \_\_\_\_\_ (score) 16 points or more.
4. We'll talk later about other kinds of vehicles when we talk about new methods for \_\_\_\_\_ (deliver) drugs.
5. Blacks who tried to change the system risked \_\_\_\_\_ (beat) or killed.
6. He was climbing Mount Taishan with his younger daughter when he suddenly had trouble \_\_\_\_\_ (breathe).
7. Just now, the teacher reported to the headmaster how the class meeting \_\_\_\_\_ (organize) the day before.
8. My best friend had an accident while I \_\_\_\_\_ (test) for a driving licence.

#### 三、从方框内选择适当的词组,并用其正确形式填空

return to normal	without hesitation	come second	fellow competitors
reflect on	in praise of	walk on air	keep it in perspective

1. This unfinished epic poem was written \_\_\_\_\_ Queen Elizabeth I.
2. They offered her a job, and she accepted \_\_\_\_\_.



3. His inclusion in the senior group caused mild controversy ( 争论 ), as he was younger than many of his \_\_\_\_\_.
4. If you \_\_\_\_\_ in the race, you'll get the qualification to compete for the next round.
5. Mark was \_\_\_\_\_ after he got 100 in the English test.
6. I don't discourage environmental awareness, but hope that you \_\_\_\_\_.
7. It remains uncertain when the rainfall will \_\_\_\_\_ and when the fishermen can work as before.
8. The start of a new year is a good time to \_\_\_\_\_ the many achievements of the past.

## 进阶 2: 能力提升

### 听力训练

#### 第一节

听下面 5 段对话。每段对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。每段对话仅读一遍。

1. What does the woman want to express?  
A. The Winter Olympics are more respectable.  
B. The Winter Olympics are more exciting.  
C. The Winter Olympics are more difficult to hold.
2. What impresses the woman most about the Olympics?  
A. The Special Olympics for disabled people.  
B. The Youth Olympic Games.  
C. The Winter Olympic Games.
3. What is the man going to do?  
A. Look for a hotel.                      B. Have his watch repaired.                      C. Meet someone at the hotel.
4. What are the speakers mainly talking about?  
A. A book.                                      B. An exam.                                      C. A teacher.
5. What do the speakers think of the music?  
A. Pleasant.                                      B. Acceptable.                                      C. Disturbing.

#### 第二节

听下面两段对话或独白。每段对话或独白后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。每段对话或独白读两遍。

听第 6 段材料,回答第 6、7 题。

6. What is the biggest difference between football and rugby?  
A. The shapes of them are different.

- B. The sizes of the teams are different.  
C. Whether or not to use hands to carry balls.
7. In which game there is more physical contact?  
A. Football.  
B. Rugby.  
C. Basketball.
- 听第7段材料,回答第8至10题。
8. Why did Francis decide to coach Shelly-Ann?  
A. Because he had a strong desire to free her from poverty.  
B. Because he sensed a great potential in her.  
C. Because she won the 100 metres Olympic gold.
9. What made Shelly-Ann so tough?  
A. The family she had.  
B. The society she lived in.  
C. Her will to get out of poverty and tough surroundings.
10. What is Shelly-Ann's future plan?  
A. She wants to do more for her country.  
B. She wants to become world champion.  
C. She wants to live in a better community.

## 写作训练

### 一、写作指导

议论文是以议论为主要表达方式的一种文体,它通过摆事实、讲道理的方式来辩明是非曲直,从而表达出作者的观点。高考议论文写作,必须逻辑严密,结构清晰,语言精练,言而有据,以议论为主,辅之以叙述、说明和描写等手法。

写作议论文时常以三段式的形式展开:

段落	思路点拨	语言积累
开头段	高考英语议论文的引言可以由两部分组成:现象+观点。如果题目中没有具体的现象,则开门见山提出自己的观点。	As far as I am concerned, ... My view is that ... Personally speaking, ... Like almost everybody else, I believe that ... From a personal perspective, I prefer to ...

(续表)

段落	思路点拨	语言积累
主体段	<p>在主体段中,务必要牢记应采用先总后分的手法——先亮出主题句,然后再用发展句充实段落。常见论证方法如下:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. 引证法(即引用一些名人名言、成语、格言、谚语等作为论据);</li> <li>2. 例证法(即举例来进行论证);</li> <li>3. 对比论证法(即通过对事物的正反两个方面的对比来分析论证)。</li> </ol> <p>此外,在主体段中要恰当地使用过渡词,段落要有明显的层次感,引领阅读者一层一层地根据你的分论点走向最终你要阐述的观点。</p>	<p>My reasons can be listed as follows.                      First of all, ...; Secondly, ...; Last but not least, ...                      Take sth for example./Take sth as an example.                      A case in point is ...                      It goes without saying that ...                      There is no doubt that ...</p>
结尾段	<p>用一两句话来结束文章,做到首尾呼应。再次阐明自己的观点,注意与引言段的观点一致,同时避免与引言段用词重复。</p>	<p>In a word/To sum up/In conclusion/On balance, ...</p>

二、在一届又一届奥运会上,我们看到了无数中国体育健儿凭着拼搏的精神为祖国和人民赢得了一枚枚宝贵的奖牌,让国歌一次次响遍世界。你认为一个优秀的运动员需要具备什么品质?举例论证你的观点。词数 150 左右。

---



---



---



---



---



---



---

### 进阶 3: 综合拓展

阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳选项

Yoga is an ancient practice that helps create a sense of union in body, mind and spirit. It brings us balance. I was seriously out of balance when I started practising yoga. I had plantar fasciitis (筋膜炎) in both feet, and my doctor had warned me against all the things I loved to do: walking, hiking, and playing tennis. Yoga became my salvation (拯救) and even enhanced my other fitness activities. I practise yoga at least twice a week, but I consider yoga to be part of my daily life because after a while

you no longer just practise yoga—you love it.

Yoga becomes part of your physical life. Your body grows stronger and more flexible as you move from one pose to the other. I spent a week in Mexico at a yoga retreat, and it was the first vacation on which I lost weight. Because yoga helps maintain a balanced metabolism (新陈代谢), and also helps to regulate weight. Additionally, yoga stretches muscles lengthwise, causing fat to be removed around the cells. I do yoga poses throughout the day. After hours at my computer, I stretch my stiff shoulders and arms. When I need a boost of energy, I do energizing poses. When I am feeling exhausted at the end of the day, I do restorative (恢复健康的) poses.

Yoga becomes part of your mental life. Yoga teaches you to focus on breathing while you hold the poses. This attention to breath is calming; it dissolves stress and anxiety. I use yogic breathing on the tennis courts, in the dentist's chair, and in traffic jams. You should always leave a yoga practice feeling energized, not tired. If you feel tired after yoga, it means you spent the time “fighting” yourself, trying to force yourself into poses. In yoga, you “surrender” (投降) to the pose by letting go of the tension.

Yoga becomes part of your spiritual life. Yoga teaches “right” living in how we deal with ourselves and others. As I work on a difficult pose, I learn patience, forgiveness, and the value of gentleness. Yoga advocates (提倡) proper eating, but you don't have to be a vegetarian to practise yoga.

- Practising Yoga is beneficial to people's health in many aspects except \_\_\_\_\_ .
  - building muscle
  - losing weight
  - maintaining a balanced metabolism
  - stretching muscles lengthwise
- If you feel tired after practising yoga, that means \_\_\_\_\_.
  - you spent the time abusing yourself
  - you forced yourself into yoga poses
  - you responded well to yoga poses
  - you consumed much energy in practising yoga
- Which of the following statements is true?
  - Yoga can help you relax yourself.
  - Yoga can relieve your pain in the dentist's chair.
  - Those who practise Yoga are all patient and gentle.
  - Yoga is only limited to such people as vegetarians.
- If the passage continues, what will most probably be written about in the next paragraph?
  - Yoga as a means to keep fit.
  - Different yoga poses.
  - Encouraging people to do yoga.
  - Personal experience of practising yoga.



## Period 6 Extended reading & Project

**教材 P25** As you know, in a football match, players try to kick or head the ball into the opposing team's goal, which is the net between two big goalposts fixed to the ground. 正如你所知道的,在足球比赛中,球员们试图把球踢进或顶进对方的球门,也就是固定在地上的两根粗大门柱之间的网。

### Point 1 *opposing adj.* 对抗的;相反的

#### ★ 解析

a player from the opposing side 对方的运动员  
Water is the opposing force to fire. 水火不相容。

#### ★ 拓展

oppose *vt.* 反对;抵制;(在竞赛中)与……角逐  
I would oppose changing the law. 我将反对修改这个法规。  
opponent *n.* 对手,竞争者;反对者  
a dangerous/worthy opponent 危险的/相当对手

**教材 P25** An insurance salesman who is about to reach his annual sales target, only for the company to make the target higher, could rightly complain about the company moving the goalposts. 有位保险销售员即将达到年度销售目标了,结果公司却把销售目标制定得更高,他完全可以抱怨公司 move the goalposts(改变规则)。

### Point 2 *complain v.* 抱怨,投诉

#### ★ 解析

I'm going to complain to the manager about this. 我要就这件事向经理投诉。

He complained bitterly that he had been unfairly treated. 他愤懑地诉说他所受到的不公平待遇。

#### ★ 拓展

complaint *n.* 投诉;怨言;不满

I'd like to make a complaint about the noise. 我要就噪音问题提出投诉。

I can see no grounds for complaint. 我看没理由抱怨。

**教材 P26** Curveballs are balls that suddenly turn in the air, and these are of course difficult for the other team to handle. 曲线球是突然在空中转向的球,这对于对手球队来说当然很难应付。

### Point 1

#### 完成句子

1. He has always \_\_\_\_\_  
(反对出国留学).
2. His parent \_\_\_\_\_ (持有相反的观点).

#### [答案]

1. opposed going abroad for studies
2. has the opposing view

### Point 2

#### 完成句子

1. \_\_\_\_\_ (投诉信)  
flooded into head office.
2. The couple \_\_\_\_\_ (抱怨了……的花费) visiting Europe.

#### [答案]

1. Letters of complaint
2. complained about the cost of

**Point 3** **handle** *vt.* 处理,应付;控制,操纵 *n.* 把手,拉手;柄

## ★ 解析

A new man was appointed to handle the crisis. 新指派了一个人来处理这场危机。

I wasn't sure if I could handle such a powerful car. 我没有把握是否能驾驶功率这样大的车。

She turned the handle and opened the door. 她转动把手,打开了门。

## ★ 拓展

deal with	“处理,应付”,强调处理的方式、方法,常与 how 连用
do with	“处理,安置”,强调处理的对象,常与 what 连用

**教材 P26** In day-to-day life, if someone makes an unfair and cruel remark, we can describe it as “below the belt”. 在日常生活中,如果有人发表了有失公允的刻薄评论,我们可以用 below the belt 来形容。

**Point 4** **remark** *n.* 谈论,言论 *v.* 说起,评论

## ★ 解析

Please make a remark on “One World One Dream”, the theme of Beijing Olympics. 请说说对北京奥运会主题口号“同一个世界 同一个梦想”的认识。

Visitors remarked on how well the children looked. 来访者说孩子们看上去很好。

## ★ 拓展

remarkable *adj.* 非凡的;奇异的;显著的

a remarkable achievement/talent/woman 非凡的成就/才能/女人

**教材 P26** When a boxer is losing badly and is too tired or confused to give up on his or her own, the coach will literally throw a towel into the ring to end the fight. 当一个拳击手输得很惨,并且因太累或思维太混乱而无法自己宣告放弃时,教练就会真的向拳击台扔一条毛巾,结束比赛。

**Point 5** **literally** *adv.* 真正地,确实地;按字面,字面上

## ★ 解析

take ... literally 仅从字面上理解

There are literally hundreds of prizes to win. 真的有好几百份奖品可以领。

**Point 3**

用 deal with/do with/handle 填空

- The president knew how to \_\_\_\_\_ the crisis.
- What did you \_\_\_\_\_ the rubbish?

[答案]

- deal with/handle
- do with

**Point 4**

完成句子

- We have created a \_\_\_\_\_ (非凡的历史) with our wisdom.
- Critics \_\_\_\_\_ (评论) the play was beyond their expectation.
- The boy likes \_\_\_\_\_ (谈论) other's appearance, which is rude.

[答案]

- remarkable history
- remarked that
- making a remark on/remarking on

**Point 5**

完成句子

- Jenny was \_\_\_\_\_ (真的没有一点钱了).
- I am not referring to



★ 拓展

literal *adj.* 字面意义的;完全按原文的  
the literal meaning 字面意思

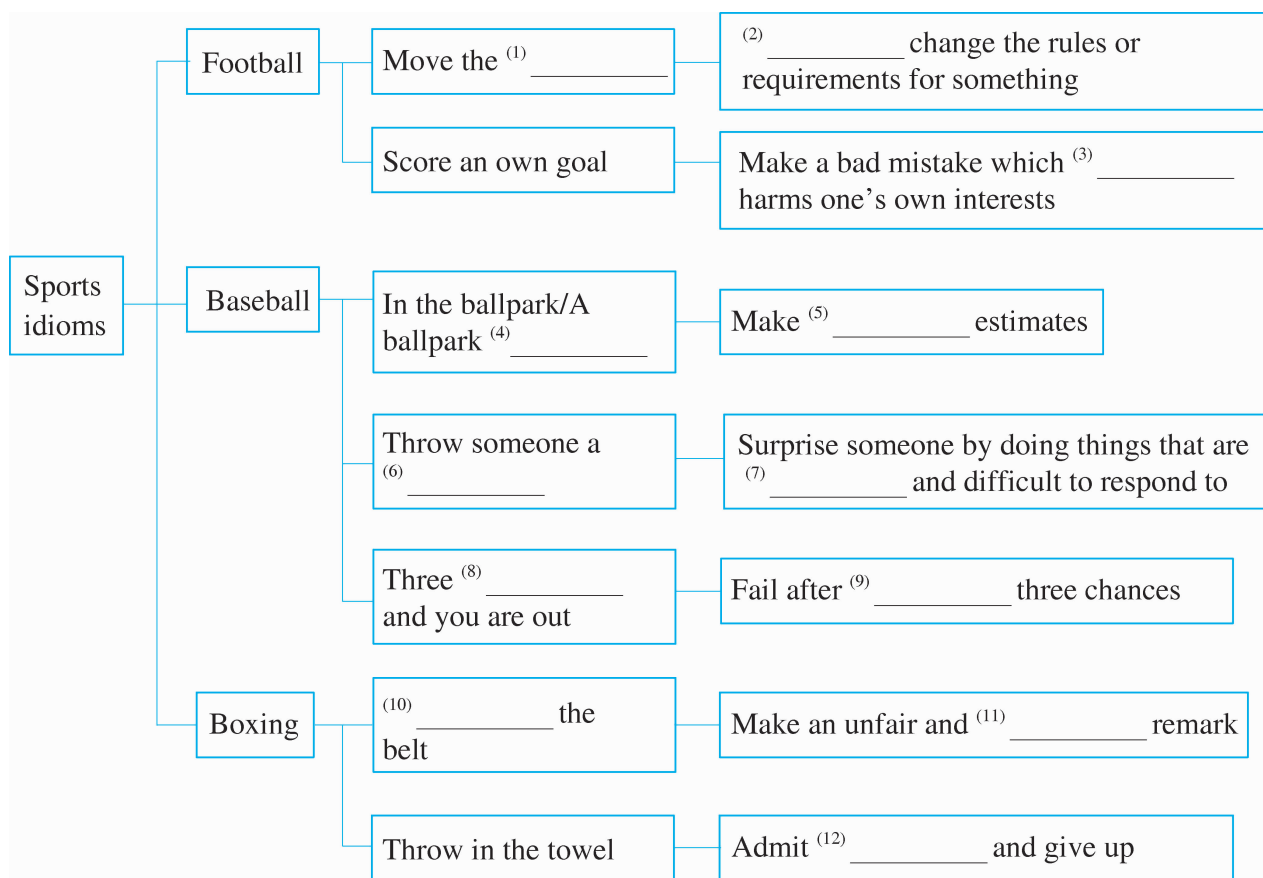
“small” people \_\_\_\_\_  
(字面意义上的).

[答案]

- literally without any money
- in the literal sense of the word

## 进阶 1: 基础巩固

一、根据 Extended reading 课文内容完成思维导图,每空一词



## 二、微写作

1. 仔细阅读 Extended reading 课文内容,写一篇 60 词左右的内容概要。

---



---



---

2. 我们国家也有很多与体育相关的谚语/成语,请列出几条并加以解释。

---



---



---

## 进阶 2: 能力提升

## 一、根据首字母或中文提示填空

1. Don't blame them. They provided wrong information u\_\_\_\_\_.
2. They finished the season at the top of the \_\_\_\_\_ (联赛).
3. I can't stand people who are \_\_\_\_\_ (残忍的) to animals.
4. The o\_\_\_\_\_ teams played a lot better than us and we lost all the games.
5. Many visitors have c\_\_\_\_\_ of our staff's bad manners recently.
6. She thought that if she armed herself with all the knowledge she could gather, she would be able to h\_\_\_\_\_ anything.
7. She admitted having driven the car without \_\_\_\_\_ (保险).
8. Sometimes you can't take some Chinese idioms l\_\_\_\_\_ because they have deeper meanings.
9. Good \_\_\_\_\_ (推销员) know how to satisfy customers' needs.
10. On several occasions she has r\_\_\_\_\_ (说起) on the boy's improvement.
11. His shoulders were broad and his w\_\_\_\_\_ narrow.
12. Your comments may \_\_\_\_\_ (适得其反) and cause you a lot of trouble.

## 二、从方框内选择适当的词组,并用其正确形式填空

find one's way into	move the goalposts	score an own goal
a ballpark estimate	throw ... a curveball	three strikes and you are out
below the belt	throw in the towel	in the ballpark

1. The price may go up another \$10, but that's still \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Philip \_\_\_\_\_ when he quit his job before signing a new contract.
3. Most of his plans didn't work and \_\_\_\_\_ the wastepaper basket.
4. Mary contacted several plumbers to get \_\_\_\_\_ of the cost to fix her toilet.
5. We'd almost signed the contract when the other guys \_\_\_\_\_ and said they wanted more money.
6. I think if someone wants to criticize me, they should focus on my work but not hit \_\_\_\_\_ by mentioning my past alcohol problems.
7. He has failed again. We might tell him that "\_\_\_\_\_".
8. The game is not over yet! Don't \_\_\_\_\_ so soon.
9. Mother Nature \_\_\_\_\_ us \_\_\_\_\_ last winter with record-breaking amounts of snow.

### 进阶 3: 综合拓展

阅读下面短文,从短文后的选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项,选项中有两项为多余选项

Idioms are one of the hardest parts of learning a language. An idiom is a phrase which has a meaning, but the meaning is not clear from the words themselves. <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ They are like puzzles and even native speakers can get confused when someone uses a phrase that they've never heard of. With that in mind, here are four common English idioms that you can use in a variety of situations.

1. Get your act together (Meaning: you need to improve your behaviour/work)

This might be something your teacher says to you if you score badly in an exam or if you misbehave in class. <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ For example, if your friend is being mean or nasty for no reason, then you can tell them that they need to get their act together.

2. Pull yourself together (Meaning: calm down)

This is a somewhat impolite way of telling someone that they are overreacting and that they need to relax. <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ If your friend tells you that their close relative has died, it is NOT the time to tell them to pull themselves together.

3. It's a piece of cake (Meaning: it's easy)

<sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

4. Break a leg (Meaning: good luck)

This is perhaps one of the most confusing yet well-known English idioms. If someone says this to you, do not take offence or think they are threatening you; they are just wishing you luck. It is most often used for people wishing success to actors and actresses before they perform on the stage, but it can be said in other situations, too.

All in all, learning a new language can be challenging. <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ However, with enough hard work and interest, you will succeed in no time. Break a leg!

- A. You can also use it to talk about people in general.
- B. If you translate an idiom word for word, it sometimes makes no sense at all.
- C. Many idioms come from the pages of Shakespeare, but most people have no idea about it.
- D. It's definitely not a piece of cake, especially when there are so many confusing idioms.
- E. You can use this idiom if you think the person you are speaking to is getting a big blow.
- F. Only use this if you think the person you are speaking to is getting upset over something insignificant.
- G. I don't know why this means what it does, but sometimes you just have to accept that English people use weird phrases.

## 每周巩固 2 Integrated skills—Project

### 一、根据首字母或中文提示填空

1. He was more than a basketball player—he was a \_\_\_\_\_ (名人).
2. Women deserve to be treated with d\_\_\_\_\_ and they should make their voices heard in the world.
3. Her first defeat was an early lesson in \_\_\_\_\_ (谦逊).
4. The o\_\_\_\_\_ of the policy do not agree with it and do not want it to be carried out.
5. He says the death of his father has given him a new \_\_\_\_\_ (观点) on life.
6. He ruled this orchestra with a brilliant ear and an iron \_\_\_\_\_ (拳).
7. When her husband died, she received £50,000 i\_\_\_\_\_.
8. The party is expecting to gain control of the \_\_\_\_\_ (议会) in the next election.
9. The play will be performed first in Wuhan, then at eight different v\_\_\_\_\_ around the country.
10. These \_\_\_\_\_ (残忍的) devices are designed to stop prisoners from bending their legs.

### 二、根据中文提示完成句子

1. 杰克听到这个消息后,看起来得意洋洋的。  
Jack \_\_\_\_\_ after he heard the news.
2. 我们学校举办了各种各样的活动,对这首发表于1900年的诗歌表示敬意。  
\_\_\_\_\_ the poem's publication in 1900, our school held many kinds of activities.
3. 我能看出,他受到了同行竞争者的嫉妒。  
I could tell that he was envied by \_\_\_\_\_.
4. 智能手机进入了千家万户。  
Smartphones \_\_\_\_\_ millions of households.
5. 某些组织正试图改变现有规则,以此获利。  
Certain organizations are \_\_\_\_\_ so that they can make a profit.
6. 当生活刁难你的时候,你想要一个能站在你身边支持你的人吗?  
Do you want someone to be there for you when \_\_\_\_\_?

### 三、阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳选项

A new study has discovered that meditation (冥想) and oxygen sport together reduce depression. The study found that this mind and body combination, done twice a week for only two months, reduced the symptoms (症状) for a group of students by 40 per cent.

“We are excited by the findings because we saw such a meaningful improvement in both depressed and non-depressed students,” said lead author Dr Brandon Alderman. “It is the first time that both of

these two behavioural ways have been looked at together for dealing with depression. ”

Researchers believe the two activities have an interactive effect on combating depression. Alderman and Dr Tracey Shors discovered that a combination of mental and physical training (MAP) enabled students with major depressive disorder not to let problems or negative thoughts defeat them.

Researchers say those who participated in the study began with 30 minutes of focused attention meditation followed by 30 minutes of oxygen sport. They were told that if their thoughts drifted to the past or the future they should refocus on their breathing, enabling those with depression to accept moment-to-moment changes in attention.

Shors, who studies the production of new brain cells in the hippocampus—part of the brain involved in memory and learning, says scientists have shown in animal models that oxygen sport exercise keeps a large number of certain cells alive.

The idea for the human intervention came from her laboratory studies, she says, with the main goal of helping individuals acquire new skills so that they can learn to recover from stressful life events.

By learning to focus their attention and exercise, people who are fighting depression can acquire new learning skills that can help them process information and reduce the overwhelming recollection of memories from the past, Shors says.

1. What was special about the research?
  - A. Adopting a way of meaningful talk.
  - B. Treating depression with special medicine.
  - C. Comparing the depressed with the non-depressed.
  - D. Combining two behavioural ways to treat depression.
2. What should the participants in the research do when they were distracted?
  - A. They should force themselves to think about their past or future.
  - B. They should adjust their attention again to the oxygen sport.
  - C. They should pull themselves back by focusing on their breathing again.
  - D. They should focus their attention again on thinking for another 30 minutes.
3. The underlined word “intervention” in Paragraph 6 can be replaced by “\_\_\_\_\_”.
  - A. interaction
  - B. combination
  - C. treatment
  - D. effect
4. What is the main purpose of Shors’ studies?
  - A. To offer people a new method to treat depression.
  - B. To study the production of new brain cells.
  - C. To find out certain brain cells of humans.
  - D. To decide the links between stress and exercise.

## Unit 3 Fit for life

### Period 1 Welcome to the unit

#### 一、阅读下面短文,从短文后的选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项,选项中有两项为多余选项

I exercise for myself after I've trained my clients. A good time for me is 3 p.m., as it's usually when I start to feel tired, <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. If it's a filming day, however, I don't work out as filming is like doing a four-hour training—<sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, keep talking non-stop, and give coaching points to the audience at home. Thankfully, it's not just me now, and we have over 30 trainers specializing in different areas of fitness, all bringing their own energy. As a content provider, I feel we're number one in adding fresh content. We identified why the audience get bored, <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

I have dinner with my family most nights at 7 p.m. We cook a large variety of things, mainly from fresh, with lots of vegetables, and I eat absolutely everything. I'm also a movie fan, so after dinner, <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

There is one thing I'm most proud of in my life. That is, getting into this business while suffering with depression, and improving mood and reducing anxiety using exercise. That's my biggest personal achievement, <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. and we are so supportive of each other's journey
- B. but exercising at this point in my day gives me energy
- C. it requires a lot of energy and focus to perform the workout
- D. so gave them lots of variation to help them train consistently
- E. I love to watch films as it's a great way for me to disconnect from my world
- F. because exercise changed something negative in my life into something positive
- G. setting up my own studio and going from zero to over 100 clients at the age of 35

#### 二、阅读下面短文,在空白处填入1个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式

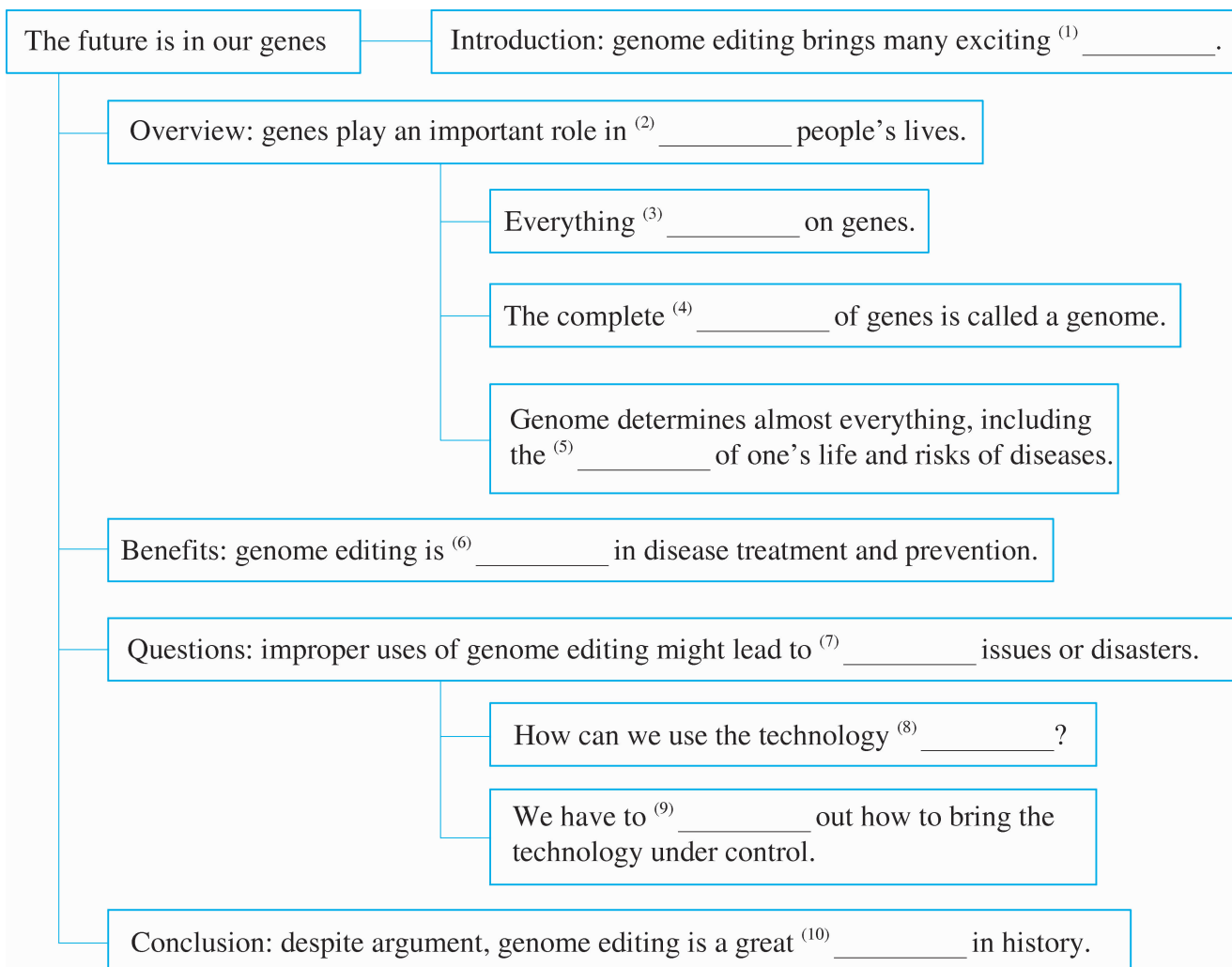
Welcome to read this magazine! How are your fitness goals <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (go)? If your new-year enthusiasm is <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (increase), you're not alone—research shows up to 63 per cent of people drop their goals within <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (week) of setting them. We are here to keep you on track! Inside this issue, we've gathered some of <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ world's leading fitness experts to help inspire your passion. What <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (good) place to start than an exciting new workout from the fitness expert, Jillian Michaels? In “Feeling strong helps your life”, the star shares her fitness wisdom <sup>(6)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (gain) from years of helping people get <sup>(7)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ shape, plus the moves <sup>(8)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ will improve your <sup>(9)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (strong), power, flexibility all in one, quick session! For more <sup>(10)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (motivate), check out “Influencer Fitness Hacks”. Happy workouts!



## Period 2 Reading (1)

### 进阶 1: 基础巩固

一、根据 Reading 课文内容完成思维导图, 每空一词



二、根据 Reading 课文内容填空, 每空一词

Genes play a <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ role in our health and disease. Our own personal genome contains information that has an <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ on our chances of contracting certain diseases. For instance, some people carry a gene that makes them more likely to catch certain <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ or develop a particular form of cancer.

Some geneticists are devoted to <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ which genes relate to which diseases, for they believe that genome editing is one of the most useful <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of treating and preventing diseases. Geneticists can correct, add, <sup>(6)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ or replace specific parts of the genetic material. Soon we may treat a wide range of health problems, such as <sup>(7)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a blind person's vision. It's also possible to prevent diseases from ever developing by correcting genes that are not <sup>(8)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ early on. Genome editing, among the new <sup>(9)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in fighting against diseases, will change our approach to health care <sup>(10)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.



## 进阶 2: 综合拓展

阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项

Tim McGraw likes lots of different keep-fit activities, but if you rewind (倒回) the clock back a decade, the Grammy-winning star will tell you he was nowhere near the fitness enthusiast he is today. 1 McGraw details in his book, *Life on the Road*, 2 with his record label (唱片公司), and a host of other 3 had finally broken the 4 and actor. His health fell into a mess due to the stress, which led to poor diet choices and 40 5 pounds on his 6' frame. At his highest weight, about 210 pounds, McGraw's 6 helped to get his life in order.

First his wife, fellow country star Faith Hill, warned him to cut back 7 his partying. Then his oldest daughter, Gracie, provided a humorous—and 8—reality check when he appeared on a 100-foot theatre 9. “My daughter said, ‘Dad, you really need to do something.’” he says. “For your 10 to say that, it sounds funny but it kick-started a thought 11 in my head that made me look into the future.” Not wanting to miss out on seeing his children grow up and have 12 of their own, McGraw decided to make some life changes. He 13 out drinking, started to eat healthily, and began 14 out every day. Slowly but surely, he reduced the pounds, and now, at age 52, he has a 15 most men half his age would kill for. “I wanted to get control of my life,” McGraw says. “What was the one thing that I could do? Well, I could control how I treated myself.”

- |                    |                 |               |               |
|--------------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A. Though       | B. As           | C. Although   | D. While      |
| 2. A. venues       | B. paces        | C. challenges | D. substances |
| 3. A. topics       | B. symbols      | C. points     | D. issues     |
| 4. A. musician     | B. official     | C. doctor     | D. lawyer     |
| 5. A. unusual      | B. extra        | C. further    | D. expected   |
| 6. A. friends      | B. family       | C. parents    | D. children   |
| 7. A. up           | B. in           | C. on         | D. for        |
| 8. A. impractical  | B. artificial   | C. cruel      | D. effective  |
| 9. A. screen       | B. poster       | C. seat       | D. production |
| 10. A. grandparent | B. parent       | C. kid        | D. friend     |
| 11. A. solidarity  | B. constitution | C. proceed    | D. process    |
| 12. A. families    | B. problems     | C. meals      | D. education  |
| 13. A. put         | B. pulled       | C. brought    | D. cut        |
| 14. A. working     | B. breaking     | C. carrying   | D. finding    |
| 15. A. opportunity | B. career       | C. shape      | D. goal       |



## Period 3 Reading (2)

**教材 P30** It also contains information that helps determine our lifespan and affects our chances of contracting certain diseases. 它还包含了有助于决定我们寿命长短并影响我们患某些疾病的概率的信息。

### Point 1 affect *v.* 影响; 侵袭, 使感染; 深深打动

#### ★ 解析

How will these changes affect us? 这些变化对于我们会有什么影响?

Rub the cream into the affected areas. 将乳膏揉进患处。

They were affected by the news. 他们被这条消息深深打动了。

#### ★ 拓展

affection *n.* 喜爱, 钟爱

Children need lots of affection. 孩子们需要多多被疼爱。

effect *n.* 影响

Modern farming methods can have a bad effect on the environment. 现代农业耕作方法可能对环境造成不良影响。

We ought to learn to distinguish cause and effect. 我们应当学会分清因果。

### Point 2 contract *vt.* 感染疾病; 与……订立合同; 收缩 *n.* 合同

#### ★ 解析

No one wants to contract the virus. 没有人想感染这种病毒。

The player is contracted to play until August. 这位选手签约参加比赛到八月份。

Glass contracts as it cools. 玻璃遇冷收缩。

Under the terms of the contract, the job should have been finished yesterday. 根据合同的条款, 这项工作本应昨天完成。

#### ★ 拓展

contraction *n.* 收缩, 缩小

**教材 P30** Geneticists have been trying to identify which genes relate to which diseases, as they believe genome editing is an effective means of disease treatment and prevention. 遗传学家一直试图找出

### Point 1

用 affect/affection/effect 的正确形式填空

1. She seemed to have suffered no ill \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Television can \_\_\_\_\_ children's behaviour.
3. Mr Li was held in deep \_\_\_\_\_ by his students.
4. It was your opinion that \_\_\_\_\_ my decision.

[答案]

1. effects
2. affect
3. affection
4. affected

### Point 2

完成句子

1. It is easy to \_\_\_\_\_ (感染) diseases if people are weak.
2. Market \_\_\_\_\_ (萎缩) are caused by a loss in confidence.
3. She has \_\_\_\_\_ (订合同) to work 20 hours a week.
4. She has a \_\_\_\_\_ (合同) to work for a major computer firm.

哪些基因与哪些疾病有关,因为他们认为基因组编辑是治疗和预防疾病的一种有效方式。

**Point 3 identify vt.** 找到,发现;确认,认出;显示,说明身份

★ 解析

Passengers were asked to identify their own suitcases before they were put on the plane. 乘客被要求先确认自己的旅行箱再送上飞机。

★ 拓展

know	知道
recognize	认识,认出,辨认出
name	说出……的名称
make something out	看清,听清,分清,辨认清楚

identification *n.* 鉴定,辨认;确认,确定;身份证明

The early identification of children with special educational needs is very important. 早期确认儿童有特殊教育需求很重要。

identity *n.* 身份;特征;同一性,一致

She is innocent; it was a case of mistaken identity. 她是无辜的,那是身份判断错误。

**Point 4 relate v.** 联系,使有联系;叙述,讲述

★ 解析

relate to 涉及;与……有关

The second paragraph relates to World War I. 第二段谈到第一次世界大战。

He related the facts of the case to journalists. 他给记者们讲述了这件事的实际情况。

★ 拓展

relative *adj.* 相比较而言的;相关联的

the position of the Sun relative to the Earth 太阳与地球的相对位置

[答案]

- contract
- contractions
- contracted
- contract

**Point 3**

完成句子

- Many of those arrested refused to \_\_\_\_\_ (说明身份) themselves.
- Their \_\_\_\_\_ (身份) were kept secret.
- Each product has a number for easy \_\_\_\_\_ (识别).
- In most cases, the clothes people wear \_\_\_\_\_ (显示) them as belonging to a particular social class.

[答案]

- identify
- identities
- identification
- identify

**Point 4**

完成句子

- The fighting resumed after a period of \_\_\_\_\_ (相对的平静).
- You should learn to \_\_\_\_\_ (把新想法和……联系起来) the past experiences.



relation *n.* 关系;亲戚

the relation of the farmer to the land 农民和土地的关系

a close/distant relation of mine 我的一位近亲/远亲

**教材 P31** Genome editing, serving as a new weapon in the fight against diseases, will lead to a fundamental change in our approach to health care. 作为抵抗疾病的新武器,基因编辑将引起医疗方法的重  
大变革。

**Point 5** approach *n.* 方式;态度;靠近 *v.* 靠近;接洽,处理

★ 解析

The school has decided to adopt a different approach to the problem. 学校决定采取另外一种方式来解决这个问题。

As you approach the town, you'll see the college on the left. 快到市镇时就可以看到左边的学院。

What's the best way of approaching the problem? 解决这个问题  
的最好方法是什么?

★ 拓展

approachable *adj.* 可接近的;和蔼可亲的,易理解的

**教材 P31** Should we prohibit geneticists from using it to enhance healthy bodies? 我们是否应该禁止遗传学家使用它来使健康的身体  
更加强健?

**Point 6** prohibit *vt.* (尤指以法令)禁止;使不可能

★ 解析

prohibit sb from doing sth 禁止某人做某事

Students are prohibited from smoking on campus. 学生不准在校  
内吸烟。

★ 拓展

prohibit	尤其指以法令禁止,常用被动语态
ban	指官方的决定或某事不被允许,即明令禁止,取缔
prevent	指阻止,阻碍,阻挠,预防

[答案]

1. relative calm
2. relate new ideas to

**Point 5**

用 approach 的正确形式填空

1. Despite being a big star, she is very \_\_\_\_\_.
2. We heard the sound of a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ car.
3. In dealing with them, she took the wrong \_\_\_\_\_.

[答案]

1. approachable
2. approaching
3. approach

**Point 6**

用 prohibit/ban/prevent 的正  
确形式填空

1. The accident could have been \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Smoking in public places \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The use of chemical weapons \_\_\_\_\_ internationally.

[答案]

1. prevented

**教材 P31** We have to figure out how to keep the technology from running wild. 我们必须想办法避免这项技术失去控制。

**Point 7 figure out** 弄懂,弄清楚,弄明白

★ 解析

Have you figured out how much the trip will cost? 旅行要花多少费用,你算出来没有啊?

★ 拓展

figure *n.* 数字;人物;身材 *v.* 是重要部分;认为

By 2009, the figure had risen to 14 million. 到 2009 年为止,这个数字已经增长到 1400 万。

I'm watching my figure. 我一直注意保持身材。

It did not figure high on her list of priorities. 这没有列入她最优先考虑办理的事项。

2. is prohibited

3. are banned

**Point 7**

完成句子

1. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ (弄懂) how to do this.

2. His salary is now in \_\_\_\_\_ (六位数).

3. She always \_\_\_\_\_ (有好身材).

[答案]

1. figure out 2. six figures

3. has a good figure

**进阶 1: 基础巩固**

一、根据句意写出画线单词的词性及含义

1. This is a contract of employment. \_\_\_\_\_

Several computer engineers have been contracted to the finance department. \_\_\_\_\_

2. The flashing light means that you must stop. \_\_\_\_\_

Is there any means of contacting him? \_\_\_\_\_

3. The runners have noticeably quickened their pace. \_\_\_\_\_

She paced up and down outside the room. \_\_\_\_\_

4. The minister opened the debate. \_\_\_\_\_

She debated with herself for a while, and then picked up the phone. \_\_\_\_\_

二、根据首字母或中文提示填空

1. S \_\_\_\_\_ are doctors who are trained to perform medical operations.

2. It is difficult to keep up with the rapid \_\_\_\_\_ (速度,节奏) of change.

3. The two approaches are \_\_\_\_\_ (根本地) different.

4. He lived to the r \_\_\_\_\_ old age of 99.

5. A d \_\_\_\_\_ is a person whose job is to take care of people's teeth.



6. Education is the only \_\_\_\_\_ (武器,手段) to fight the spread of the disease.
7. They thought that his behaviour was \_\_\_\_\_ (反常的).
8. All plants and animals are made up of c\_\_\_\_\_.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ (最终), you'll have to make the decision yourself.
10. Worms have a \_\_\_\_\_ (寿命) of a few months.
11. Your opinion will not a\_\_\_\_\_ our decision.
12. I'm sorry to inform you that your name has been d\_\_\_\_\_ from the list.
13. There is a \_\_\_\_\_ (病毒) going around the school.
14. She was able to \_\_\_\_\_ (识别) her attacker.
15. The police are trying to r\_\_\_\_\_ public order after the unrest.

### 三、从方框内选择适当的词组,并用其正确形式填空

apply to	arise from	prohibit ... from	put ... in place
wrestle with	without doubt	be to one's advantage	figure out

1. After thinking for a while, we still couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ how to do this.
2. This course has been, \_\_\_\_\_, one of the most useful we have attended so far.
3. At first the classroom was in a mess; soon we \_\_\_\_\_ everything \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Emotional or mental problems can \_\_\_\_\_ a physical cause.
5. It would \_\_\_\_\_ for us to attend this meeting.
6. She spent the whole weekend \_\_\_\_\_ the problem.
7. The word "unexciting" could never be \_\_\_\_\_ her novels.
8. There is a law in this country \_\_\_\_\_ alcohol \_\_\_\_\_ being sold.

## 进阶 2: 能力提升

### 一、同义句转换

1. Her voice was trembling though she made efforts to control it.  
Her voice was trembling \_\_\_\_\_ her efforts to control it.
2. As the economy continues to develop fast, questions arise.  
With the economy \_\_\_\_\_ to develop \_\_\_\_\_, questions arise.
3. Genome editing, which serves as a new weapon in the fight against diseases, will lead to a

fundamental change.

Genome editing, \_\_\_\_\_ a new weapon in the fight against diseases, will lead to a fundamental change.

4. We are excited about the scientific advances.

We are \_\_\_\_\_ about the scientific advances.

5. We ought to make sure that genome editing will change the situation in a way that gives us advantage.

We ought to make sure that genome editing will work \_\_\_\_\_.

6. It is likely that some people with certain genes will catch that virus.

Some people carry certain genes that make them \_\_\_\_\_ catch that virus.

## 二、根据中文提示完成句子

1. 关于这个主题,仍有许多有待探索与讨论。

There is still much \_\_\_\_\_ the subject.

2. 如果没有恰当的控制,基因编辑可能和失控的汽车一样危险。

Without appropriate controls, genome editing \_\_\_\_\_ a car \_\_\_\_\_.

3. 遗传学家一直试图找出哪些基因与哪些疾病有关,因为他们认为基因组编辑是治疗和预防疾病的一种有效手段。

Geneticists have been trying to \_\_\_\_\_, as they believe genome editing is \_\_\_\_\_ disease treatment and prevention.

4. 哲学家、遗传学家、政府官员都已经开始努力处理这样的道德问题了。

\_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and government \_\_\_\_\_ have all started to \_\_\_\_\_ such \_\_\_\_\_.

5. 最终,这项新技术可能甚至会让调整不正常的基因这件事成为可能。

Ultimately, this new technology might even \_\_\_\_\_ correct \_\_\_\_\_ genes.

## 进阶 3: 综合拓展

阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项

Liz Murray grew up in poverty with parents who were drug addicts and both later became HIV positive. As Murray grew older, her parents lost their apartment to afford the 1. Murray became 2. For a time Liz was 3 in a foster home. Rather than give in to the discomfort and sadness





that had characterized her 4 in foster care, Liz chose to look after herself. She slept on friends' couches or floors at odd hours, camped outside or 5 the subway all night.

In 1996, Murray's mother 6, and the effect of that loss became a turning 7 in her life. She decided to do something about it. Murray realized that she wanted to go to 8. At the age of 17, while still living on the streets, she was 9 to an alternative high school, the Humanities Preparatory Academy, where she doubled her course-load and 10 high school in only two years. One of the top ten students in the school, Liz went on a school-sponsored trip to Boston and walked through Harvard Yard. 11 she took several years off to care for her father, Murray graduated from Harvard before going on to become a 12 speaker, appearing in a TED Talk. Liz is also a keen 13 whose memoirs, *Breaking Night* were published in 2005. She shared her story and insights with 14 across the country.

Her story was 15 for film by Lifetime Television in the 2003 film *Homeless to Harvard: the Liz Murray Story*.

- |                     |              |               |                |
|---------------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. car           | B. drugs     | C. food       | D. medicine    |
| 2. A. homeless      | B. dangerous | C. stressful  | D. special     |
| 3. A. collected     | B. hired     | C. placed     | D. controlled  |
| 4. A. experience    | B. adventure | C. promise    | D. interest    |
| 5. A. rode          | B. aboard    | C. used       | D. travelled   |
| 6. A. turned off    | B. woke up   | C. broke down | D. passed away |
| 7. A. bit           | B. part      | C. point      | D. block       |
| 8. A. church        | B. school    | C. hospital   | D. shelter     |
| 9. A. admitted      | B. devoted   | C. sentenced  | D. connected   |
| 10. A. acquired     | B. completed | C. advanced   | D. discovered  |
| 11. A. When         | B. Unless    | C. Because    | D. Although    |
| 12. A. motivational | B. grateful  | C. serious    | D. stubborn    |
| 13. A. actress      | B. teacher   | C. writer     | D. lawyer      |
| 14. A. audiences    | B. listeners | C. teenagers  | D. adults      |
| 15. A. adapted      | B. sent      | C. changed    | D. displayed   |

## Period 4 Grammar and usage

### 现在完成进行时

英语常见时态有 16 种,其中现在完成进行时表示一直持续到现在的动作,该动作可能刚停止,也可能仍在进行。

时 \ 态	一般	进行	完成	完成进行
现在	一般现在时	现在进行时	现在完成时	现在完成进行时
过去	一般过去时	过去进行时	过去完成时	过去完成进行时
将来	一般将来时	将来进行时	将来完成时	将来完成进行时
过去将来	一般过去将来时	过去将来进行时	过去将来完成时	过去将来完成进行时

各种时态主动语态谓语动词形式,以 study 为例,每种时态举一例:

时 \ 态	一般	进行	完成	完成进行
现在	study	is studying	have/has studied	have/has been studying
过去	studied	was studying	had studied	had been studying
将来	will study	will be studying	will have studied	will have been studying
过去将来	would study	would be studying	would have studied	would have been studying

#### 一、现在完成进行时的谓语动词形式、表达的含义以及常见时间状语

1. 现在完成进行时谓语动词形式: have/has been doing。例如:

She has been waiting for three hours.

2. 现在完成进行时表达的含义。

现在完成进行时通常表示“某动作或者状态一直在做或者一直在发生”,往往表示“从过去到现在(或者到刚才)持续了一段时间”且“这一段时间中一直在做的事情”(如:他们一直劳动三个小时了),有时表示“从过去到现在一直在定期(或者重复)发生的事情”(如:最近几个月我一直上晚自习)。现在完成进行时往往带有感情色彩,表示“很辛苦”“很疲劳”“很执着”等含义。现在完成进行时的谓语动词一般为延续性动词。例如:

She has been cleaning the classroom for three hours.

They have been attending evening music lessons for three months.

3. 现在完成进行时常见时间状语: always、all the time、for three hours、since three days ago 等。



## 二、现在完成进行时的注意点和易错点

1. 初学者往往认为现在完成进行时表示“现在完成”加上“现在进行”，并根据一些例子得出结论：现在完成时表示“现在已经完成了，往往不持续下去”，现在完成进行时表示“现在还在做，还会持续下去”；其实，现在完成进行时表示“动作或者状态持续了一段时间”加上“这一段时间中一直在做”，该动作或者状态可能会持续下去，也可能不持续下去。例如：

She has been repairing her bike. (指刚才一直在修，未涉及是否修好，侧重表达刚才一直在忙着修理，没有休息没有玩)

2. 有人认为现在完成进行时只能表示动作，不能和静态动词连用；实际上，现在完成进行时是可以和静态动词连用的。例如：

I have been living here for three years.

本句和现在完成时的含义差别不大：I have lived here for three years.

3. 有些表示结果、心理活动的动词一般不用于现在进行时，同样也不用于现在完成进行时，例如 forget、know、want、wish 等。

## 三、典型例题讲解

1. Dashan, who \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) crosstalk, the Chinese comedic tradition, for decades, wants to mix it up with the Western stand-up tradition.

本题答案：has been learning。“学习了几十年中国传统喜剧——相声的大山，想把相声和西方的单口喜剧传统结合起来。”定语从句的时间状语为 for decades，这里用现在完成进行时表示这几十年来大山一直在学习相声。

2. —Could I use your car tomorrow morning?

—Sure, I \_\_\_\_\_ (write) a report at home.

本题答案：will be writing。“——明天上午我能用你的小汽车吗？——可以，明天上午我在家写报告。”用将来进行时表示明天早晨将会正在家里写报告，因此你可以借车。如果用现在完成进行时，则表示从过去某个时刻开始到现在我一直在家写报告，与句意不符。

3. —Why, Jack, you look so tired!

—Well, I \_\_\_\_\_ (paint) the house and I must finish the work tomorrow.

本题答案：have been painting。“——怎么啦，杰克？你看起来很累啊！——哦，我刚才一直在粉刷房屋，明天必须完成呢。”用现在完成进行时表示从过去的某个时刻开始到刚才一直在做的事情，导致现在看起来很累。现在完成进行时不仅可以表示延续到现在的事情，也可以表示延续到刚才、刚刚结束的事情。

## 进阶 1: 基础巩固

### 一、根据首字母或中文提示填空

1. The company applied for a \_\_\_\_\_ (专利) on its new product.
2. Her boots are obviously made of l\_\_\_\_\_.
3. It's not a hotel in the \_\_\_\_\_ (传统的) sense, but rather a whole village turned into a hotel.
4. We should care for the sick, elderly, and d\_\_\_\_\_.
5. We would be g\_\_\_\_\_ for any help that you can give us.
6. Do you think the person with a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ (外向的) personality is often more popular?
7. The new \_\_\_\_\_ (橡胶) ball springs high.
8. The city is dotted with small lakes, natural and a\_\_\_\_\_.
9. Now most classrooms are e\_\_\_\_\_ with multimedia.
10. She is so shy that she always looks for a chance to \_\_\_\_\_ (不与人交往) into herself.

### 二、指出下列句中所用的时态

1. He has been honoured as a master doctor since the Eastern Han Dynasty. \_\_\_\_\_
2. The speed of 6G will exceed 125 GB/s, allowing for a new generation of virtual reality. \_\_\_\_\_
3. This actor often has the first two tricks planned before performing. \_\_\_\_\_
4. If I hadn't been faced with so many barriers, I wouldn't be where I am. \_\_\_\_\_
5. She has been learning English at an evening class for three years. \_\_\_\_\_
6. It would have saved me some trouble had I known the schedule. \_\_\_\_\_

### 三、将下面的一般现在时句子改写为其余 15 种时态, 可以改变时间状语

一般现在时: I study English every day.

1. 现在进行时: \_\_\_\_\_
2. 现在完成时: \_\_\_\_\_
3. 现在完成进行时: \_\_\_\_\_
4. 一般过去时: \_\_\_\_\_
5. 过去进行时: \_\_\_\_\_
6. 过去完成时: \_\_\_\_\_
7. 过去完成进行时: \_\_\_\_\_
8. 一般将来时: \_\_\_\_\_
9. 将来进行时: \_\_\_\_\_



10. 将来完成时: \_\_\_\_\_
11. 将来完成进行时: \_\_\_\_\_
12. 一般过去将来时: \_\_\_\_\_
13. 过去将来进行时: \_\_\_\_\_
14. 过去将来完成时: \_\_\_\_\_
15. 过去将来完成进行时: \_\_\_\_\_

## 进阶 2: 能力提升

### 一、根据中文提示用现在完成进行时完成句子

1. 他肯定获胜,因为他已经准备这个一年多了。  
He is sure \_\_\_\_\_ because he \_\_\_\_\_ for over one year.
2. 你已经在电脑前工作太长时间了。  
You \_\_\_\_\_ for too long.
3. 自从昨天晚上起我们就一直在等她了。  
We \_\_\_\_\_ since last night.
4. 这小孩浑身是汗,因为他整个早晨都在外面玩。  
The child is wet all over, for he \_\_\_\_\_ all the morning.
5. 玛丽已经找工作三个多月了,这是她第一次面试。  
Mary \_\_\_\_\_ for more than three months, and this is her first interview.
6. 我们一直在打扫教室,还没完成呢。  
We \_\_\_\_\_, and we haven't finished it yet.
7. 她已经在床上躺了两天。  
She \_\_\_\_\_ for two days.
8. 他一贯工作认真。  
He \_\_\_\_\_ hard.
9. 你开车两小时了,现在轮到我了。  
You \_\_\_\_\_ for two hours, and it's my turn now.
10. 雨下了两周了,什么时候停啊?  
It \_\_\_\_\_ for two weeks. When will the rain stop?

### 二、微写作

假定你校原计划举办关于“如何有效预防病毒”的讲座,现因李华教授身体不适,不能如期进行,请你代表学生会写一份延期举行讲座的书面通知。内容包括:

1. 延期原因;

2. 另定时间为 11 月 9 日上午 9 点;
3. 地点为教学楼 101 教室;
4. 欢迎所有想参加的师生。

注意:

1. 词数 80 左右;
2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

---



---



---



---

### 进阶 3: 综合拓展

一、阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项

Jena Starkes is realistic about the challenges that COVID-19 presents to her family. The 45-year-old lives with her 81-year-old mother in Brooklyn, and if either of them contracts the virus, they're in 1. "If I get it and I give it to her, it is 2 that she would survive," Starkes says. But if Starkes gets it, she will have a problem too. "What if I had to pay \$300 for a test?" she says. "I 3 could not."

Starkes owns her own web-design business, so she neither receives employer-based insurance (保险) nor 4 for Medicaid. And she can't afford to buy an individual plan on the marketplace. So, like tens of millions of other Americans, she's facing down a(n) 5 pandemic (流行病) without health insurance. On 18 March, Congress passed the Families First Coronavirus Response Act, which 6 a small slice of this problem: the cost of finding out if you've got COVID-19 in the first place. The law requires that all 7 insurers—Medicare, Medicaid, other government plans and most private insurance—cover all COVID-19 testing and testing-related services. That means no co-pays, no co-insurance charges: free. That's 8 to be true even if you don't have insurance, like Starkes. The law provided \$1 billion to compensate (补偿) medical providers for uninsured 9 testing, and it allows states to choose to pay for uninsured residents' COVID-19 testing through their Medicaid programmes.

But patient 10 say it's not that easy. There are plenty of other ways the law 11 to protect people, even if you have insurance. The law says that insurers must 12 patients' visits to doctors' offices, urgent-care centres, telehealth platforms or emergency rooms, so long as the services "13

to the administration” of a COVID-19 test or “to the evaluation of such individual for purposes of determining the need” of a test. That means that if your visit does not 14 in a COVID-19 test, you may end up 15 a bill. It also means that if you get tested somewhere that is not in your insurance plan’s network, you may get a bill too. That may seem unfair, but Starkes is unsurprised. “That’s terrible, but that’s America,” she says.

- |                     |                  |                |               |
|---------------------|------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. fashion       | B. shape         | C. trouble     | D. vain       |
| 2. A. unconditional | B. undeniable    | C. unavoidable | D. unlikely   |
| 3. A. literally     | B. unnecessarily | C. hardly      | D. nearly     |
| 4. A. struggles     | B. qualifies     | C. accounts    | D. answers    |
| 5. A. rural         | B. urban         | C. global      | D. tiny       |
| 6. A. acknowledges  | B. accomplishes  | C. acquires    | D. addresses  |
| 7. A. exceeding     | B. existing      | C. excluding   | D. exploding  |
| 8. A. supposed      | B. suggested     | C. submitted   | D. subscribed |
| 9. A. tourists’     | B. bosses’       | C. customers’  | D. patients’  |
| 10. A. crowds       | B. hosts         | C. advocates   | D. addicts    |
| 11. A. aims         | B. fails         | C. intends     | D. tends      |
| 12. A. cover        | B. resist        | C. send        | D. refuse     |
| 13. A. apply        | B. depend        | C. rise        | D. relate     |
| 14. A. contribute   | B. lead          | C. result      | D. bring      |
| 15. A. with         | B. for           | C. of          | D. to         |

## 二、阅读下面短文,在空白处填入 1 个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式

We’re increasingly busy, surrounded by technology and experiencing a constant sense of strong feelings, but yoga is <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ unbelievable tool <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ can help calm your mind. It can build strength and flexibility, reduce stress and <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (anxious), and even improve your overall health.

A yoga class will not only help your physical body, <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ aid your inner strength and happiness. And it truly is for everyone—there is such a wide <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (various) of classes, from postnatal (产后的) yoga to power yoga and even chair yoga. Injuries don’t <sup>(6)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (necessary) mean yoga isn’t for you. If you <sup>(7)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (injure), I’d recommend you have an <sup>(8)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (assess) by a qualified health professional to confirm a diagnosis (诊断) and provide advice. However, <sup>(9)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (have) an injury, in most cases, doesn’t mean you can’t continue exercising or practising yoga.

<sup>(10)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ combining your exercises with modified moves, you can improve and even speed up recovery.



## 每周巩固 1 Welcome to the unit—Grammar and usage

### 一、根据首字母或中文提示填空

1. There is much \_\_\_\_\_ (争论) on the issue of childcare.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ (调查发现) of the team was published last month.
3. Your father's \_\_\_\_\_ (癌症) treatment involves a lot of complex decisions.
4. We \_\_\_\_\_ (专门从事) in offering unforgettable sports adventures for sports fans.
5. One of the most important c\_\_\_\_\_ of teenagers is independence.
6. Everything from the colour of our eyes to our t\_\_\_\_\_ for maths depends on genes.
7. Such treatments may be used to \_\_\_\_\_ (恢复) a blind person's vision.
8. We should r\_\_\_\_\_ our use of genome editing to the treatment and prevention of diseases.
9. This technology can be employed to increase the human r\_\_\_\_\_ to colds.
10. It is widely considered that genome editing is one of the greatest i\_\_\_\_\_ in the history of science.

### 二、从方框内选择适当的词组,并用其正确形式填空

a wide range of    moral issues    run wild    and beyond    a means of

1. Physical punishment should not be used as \_\_\_\_\_ controlling children.
2. The vegetable garden has \_\_\_\_\_ while I've been away.
3. The magazines are full of \_\_\_\_\_ of ordinary people.
4. There are \_\_\_\_\_ career opportunities open to young people.
5. Our organization will help all the English learners this year \_\_\_\_\_.

### 三、阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项

This is what Krissy Cela tells us on staying motivated. “I focus on more than just the physical results. I used to train to look a certain way—now, I've   1   that training is so much more than about   2  . Not only has keeping fit helped me to grow   3   physically, but it has also helped me to be healthier   4  . I feel powerful, energetic and focused after my   5   because exercising is my time to be completely   6   in the moment, and I love it. This is why I created my app, Tone & Sculpt. It has an amazing community of women who share how   7   has impacted their lives   8   a positive way.   9   you complete a workout, take a moment to think about   10   that session has made you feel—that is your moment.”

“There are so many options for those looking to   11   more exercise into their day. Home exercise solutions such as Peloton are brilliant because they're   12   to be as convenient as possible. You can choose from thousands of classes, and you can stream a 20-minute strength workout, for



example, on your tablet (平板电脑). Find what 13 for you, as that's when you'll feel the 14. Make small changes too; it could be running home from work or getting off the tube one 15 early. Treat exercise as 'me time'. Put it in your diary—a meeting with yourself.”

- |                          |               |                |                 |
|--------------------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. identified         | B. realized   | C. affected    | D. committed    |
| 2. A. energy             | B. motivation | C. appearance  | D. construction |
| 3. A. taller             | B. happier    | C. younger     | D. stronger     |
| 4. A. characteristically | B. mentally   | C. emotionally | D. socially     |
| 5. A. boundary           | B. ambition   | C. workouts    | D. constitution |
| 6. A. diverse            | B. gradual    | C. faithful    | D. present      |
| 7. A. fitness            | B. change     | C. dignity     | D. insurance    |
| 8. A. on                 | B. in         | C. at          | D. with         |
| 9. A. Next time          | B. Next that  | C. Next when   | D. The next     |
| 10. A. why               | B. whether    | C. when        | D. how          |
| 11. A. apply             | B. equip      | C. fit         | D. provide      |
| 12. A. proposed          | B. determined | C. designed    | D. sponsored    |
| 13. A. works             | B. operates   | C. effects     | D. succeeds     |
| 14. A. impact            | B. difference | C. extreme     | D. tension      |
| 15. A. end               | B. stand      | C. station     | D. stop         |

#### 四、阅读下面短文,在空白处填入 1 个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式

You've always known that sleep is beneficial to your well-being because it makes sense—the more you sleep, the <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (little) tired you feel. But how sleep impacts your bodies is far more essential <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you thought.

“New studies have thrown sleep into this whole new level of <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (aware),” says Brandon Marcello, a high-performance specialist who has worked with Olympic and professional athletes and is a former <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (direct) of Sports Performance at Stanford University. “If your opponent is not tired but you are, even if you may be more <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (talent), you are going to be <sup>(6)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a disadvantage.”

How much of a disadvantage? According to a Stanford University study, eleven basketball players <sup>(7)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (instruct) to get a minimum of ten hours of rest per night for five weeks. After five weeks, the athletes recorded faster race times and <sup>(8)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ 9% increase in free throw accuracy and three-pointers. Marcello points to another study logging less than six hours of sleep per night cuts your cancer-fighting cells in half, <sup>(9)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (low) your emotional desires, and prevents your brain from <sup>(10)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (clear) itself of something dirty. “Sleep doesn't guarantee you the best game of your life,” Marcello says. “But it puts the opportunity in your favour.”

## Period 5 Integrated skills

### 进阶 1: 基础巩固

#### 一、根据首字母或中文提示完成句子

1. When giving a lecture, you ought to a \_\_\_\_\_ your language to the age of your audience.
2. That government is determined to \_\_\_\_\_ (应付, 处理) the coming economic crisis.
3. I'm sorry to d \_\_\_\_\_ you, but can I talk to you for a moment?
4. The plane was already f \_\_\_\_\_ up and ready to go.
5. Thanks to the encouragement of her mother, she finally faced the \_\_\_\_\_ (缺陷) bravely.

#### 二、从方框内选择适当的词组, 并用其正确形式填空

give rise to	suffer from	focus on	come up with	fuel concerns
be grateful for	be capable of	make great progress	be equipped with	hold on to

1. She stood and \_\_\_\_\_ the back of the chair to stop herself from falling.
2. Most classrooms in Jiangsu \_\_\_\_\_ multimedia already.
3. They have \_\_\_\_\_ in controlling their crisis.
4. I'm sure every student in the class \_\_\_\_\_ passing the exam.
5. I will forever \_\_\_\_\_ the help offered by all my teachers.
6. Last week the new policy \_\_\_\_\_ about health care.
7. She \_\_\_\_\_ a new idea for increasing sales and discussed that with the manager.
8. Each exercise here \_\_\_\_\_ a different language point.
9. There are some road accident victims \_\_\_\_\_ shock.
10. The success of the woman novelist will \_\_\_\_\_ the popularity of her book.

#### 三、根据中文提示完成句子

1. 这些年来她一直过着令人难以置信的异常的生活。  
These years she \_\_\_\_\_ abnormal life.
2. 据透露, 重要的证据已经消失了。  
It was \_\_\_\_\_ that important evidence was \_\_\_\_\_.
3. 她现在管辖着过去是她上司的那些人。  
She now has \_\_\_\_\_ the people who used to be her bosses.
4. 大多数人需要三天左右来适应他们的新眼镜。  
Most people will take around three days \_\_\_\_\_.
5. 在远足时, 学生们需要有人带路。  
The students need someone \_\_\_\_\_ on their hike.



## 写作训练

### 一、写作指导

应用文的评分主要从文体特点、内容要点、语言表达三个方面进行评估。同学们要了解应用文的写作思路和评分标准,并积累表达方式。写作时应注意:

1. 要点必须全面,要把握关键词,使用符合该文体特点的表达方式;
2. 注意衔接与连贯,过渡词要自然;
3. 适当使用复杂结构,如非谓语从句、三大从句、倒装、强调等;
4. 积累高级词汇和修辞;
5. 注重检查,书写、标点、拼写、语法是写作规范的重要方面。

假定你将介绍某次主题班会,可从背景简介、不同的观点和自己的看法这三个方面展开。

段落	思路点拨	语言积累
开头段	讲述事情的缘由	Our class had a heated discussion about .../As .../Since .../ With .../Despite .../due to .../as a result of ...
主体段	展开主体部分,讲述不同观点(可分两段,从正反两方面展开)	Some think ... because .../Besides ... make use of .../take advantage of ... On the one hand, ... On the other hand, ... For one thing, ... For another thing, ...
结尾段	谈论自己的看法,陈述理由	In my view, .../In summary, .../In conclusion, .../As far as I'm concerned, ...

二、假定你是李华,最近一家英文报纸发起了父母是否应该给孩子买电脑的讨论。以下是你班同学讨论的情况。请你给该报写一封信,描述讨论结果。

1. 赞成:有助于孩子学习,开阔孩子的视野。
2. 反对:孩子自制力差,容易迷上网络游戏;孩子的辨别能力不高,容易受骗。
3. 你的看法……

注意:

1. 词数 80 左右(开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数);
2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

Dear Editor,

Recently our class had a heated discussion about whether parents should buy their children computers. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Yours,  
Li Hua



### 进阶 3: 综合拓展

阅读下面短文,根据其内容写一篇 60 词左右的内容概要

Sores Duman, 29-year-old, will see a movie with his mates Piebe and Martey this week. It might take more time than usual for his friends to get ready for this activity. Piebe is 79 and Martey 94. Mr Duman lives at a care home in Deventer, the Netherlands. His housemates' average age is over 85. He has been there for three years, with five other university students and around 150 elderly residents. This is a project that provides them with free housing in exchange for 30 hours per month of their time living as a "good neighbour".

Both parties appear to benefit from the programme. Cash-tripped young people like Mr Duman save much money in rent every year. Living with the old also helps them learn to be more patient as a result of the experience; the pace of life is slower at the home. For another, the elderly enjoy young people's being around. A resident puts his thumb up for the project: "We have parties, yoga classes, chatting here. Last week at my birthday, they put me into the walker and race me through the hall. Never a happier time than that!"

Humanitas is not the first institution to urge old and young people to live together. Non-profit organizations across Spain and care homes in Britain, France and Cleveland, Ohio, have also experimented with the idea. A team from Finland visited Deventer and was inspired to start a similar project.

Such projects could help handle loneliness, an increasing problem across the rich world. The very old, the sick or disabled are most at risk of feeling lonely. It goes hand in hand with social isolation (孤立). About 18% of adult EU citizens see friends or family at most only once a month. Nearly half of the elderly over 65 say that television or pets are their main form of company. Loneliness is also considered to have serious health consequences. A study found that lonely people had on average a 26% higher risk of dying than those who were not lonely. And the problem may only get worse.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## Period 6 Extended reading & Project

**教材 P39** There is evidence that acupuncture dates back to the Stone Age, when stone tools called *bian* were used to press areas of the body. 有证据表明, 针灸始于石器时代, 当时人们用一种名为“砭”的石器来按压身体部位。

**Point 1** **evidence** *n.* 证据, 证明; 物证, 人证 *vt.* 证明, 表明

### ★ 解析

There is clear evidence that TV advertising influences what children buy. 有明确的证据表明, 电视广告影响儿童的购买行为。

In that country, the legal profession is still a largely male world, as evidenced by the small number of women judges. 那个国家的法律界在很大程度上仍然是男人的世界, 这一点从女法官的人数屈指可数即可得到证实。

in evidence 显眼, 显而易见

The police are much in evidence in the street today. 今天在街上警察随处可见。

### ★ 拓展

evident *adj.* 清楚的, 显而易见的, 显然的

It has now become evident to us that a mistake has been made. 我们现在已经清楚知道出了差错。

evidently *adv.* 明显地, 显然地

She walked slowly down the road, evidently in pain. 她沿路慢慢地走着, 显然很痛苦。

**教材 P39** Some acupuncturists today still use gold and silver needles, but the majority have now switched to stainless steel ones. 如今有些针灸师仍在使用金针或银针, 但大多数医师已经换成不锈钢针了。

**Point 2** **switch** *v.* 转变; 交换; 调班 *n.* 开关, 闸; 转变, 改变

### ★ 解析

You can press these two keys to switch between documents on screen. 你可以按这两个键在屏幕上的两个文件之间切换。

I can't work tomorrow—will you switch with me? 明天我不能上班, 咱俩调个班好不好?

She made the switch from full-time to part-time work when her second child was born. 第二个孩子出生后她就从全职工作改为兼职工作。

switch off/on 关/开(电灯、机器等)

switch over 换台; 换频道

### Point 1

用 **evidence** 的正确形式填空

- We found further scientific \_\_\_\_\_ for this theory.
- She danced with \_\_\_\_\_ enjoyment.
- I'm afraid I couldn't finish the work tonight.  
—\_\_\_\_\_ not.
- \_\_\_\_\_, she had nothing to do with the whole affair.

[答案]

- evidence
- evident
- Evidently
- Evidently

### Point 2

完成句子

- When did you \_\_\_\_\_ (换工作)?
- My mother's phone must \_\_\_\_\_ (关机了).
- Please \_\_\_\_\_ (关灯) as you leave.
- Which of the \_\_\_\_\_ (开关) should I press to turn it off?





**教材 P40** And it has been used to treat more than just physical problems—acupuncturists have discovered that the treatment helps with mental problems like depression and anxiety too. 而且它不仅被用来治疗身体问题——针灸师发现这种疗法对抑郁、焦虑等心理问题也有效果。

**Point 3** *anxiety n.* 焦虑;担心;渴望

★ 解析

Some hospital patients experience high levels of anxiety. 有些住院病人十分焦虑不安。

If you are worried about your health, share your anxieties with your doctor. 你要是担心自己的健康,就把忧虑告诉你的医生吧。

★ 拓展

*anxious adj.* 焦虑的,忧虑的,担心的;渴望的

an anxious look 忧虑的目光

Parents are naturally anxious for their children. 父母自然为儿女担心。

She was anxious that he should meet her father. 她盼望他见她父亲。

*anxiously adv.* 焦虑地

**教材 P41** Burns damage skin, which can lead to infection and other health problems. 烧伤损害皮肤,进而导致感染以及其他的健康问题。

**Point 4** *infection n.* 传染,感染

★ 解析

People of that age are not easily exposed to infection. 那个年龄的人不容易暴露于易受感染的环境。

★ 拓展

*infect v.* 传染;使感染;影响

She infected the children with her enthusiasm for music. 她对音乐的热爱感染了孩子们。

*infected adj.* 带菌的;感染病毒的;感染电脑病毒的

an infected water supply 受污染的供水系统

an infected PC 中了病毒的个人电脑

*infectious adj.* 传染性的,感染的;有传染力的

infectious laughter 富有感染力的笑声

I am still infectious. 我还处在传染期。

*infectiously adv.* 传染性地,感染地;有传染力地

laugh infectiously 笑得有感染力

[答案]

1. switch jobs
2. be switched off
3. switch the lights off
4. switches

**Point 3**

用 *anxiety* 的正确形式填空

1. There were a few \_\_\_\_\_ moments in the baseball game.
2. Everyone can see his \_\_\_\_\_ to win the vote.
3. There are some graduates waiting \_\_\_\_\_ for interviews.

[答案]

1. anxious
2. anxiety
3. anxiously

**Point 4**

用 *infection* 的正确形式填空

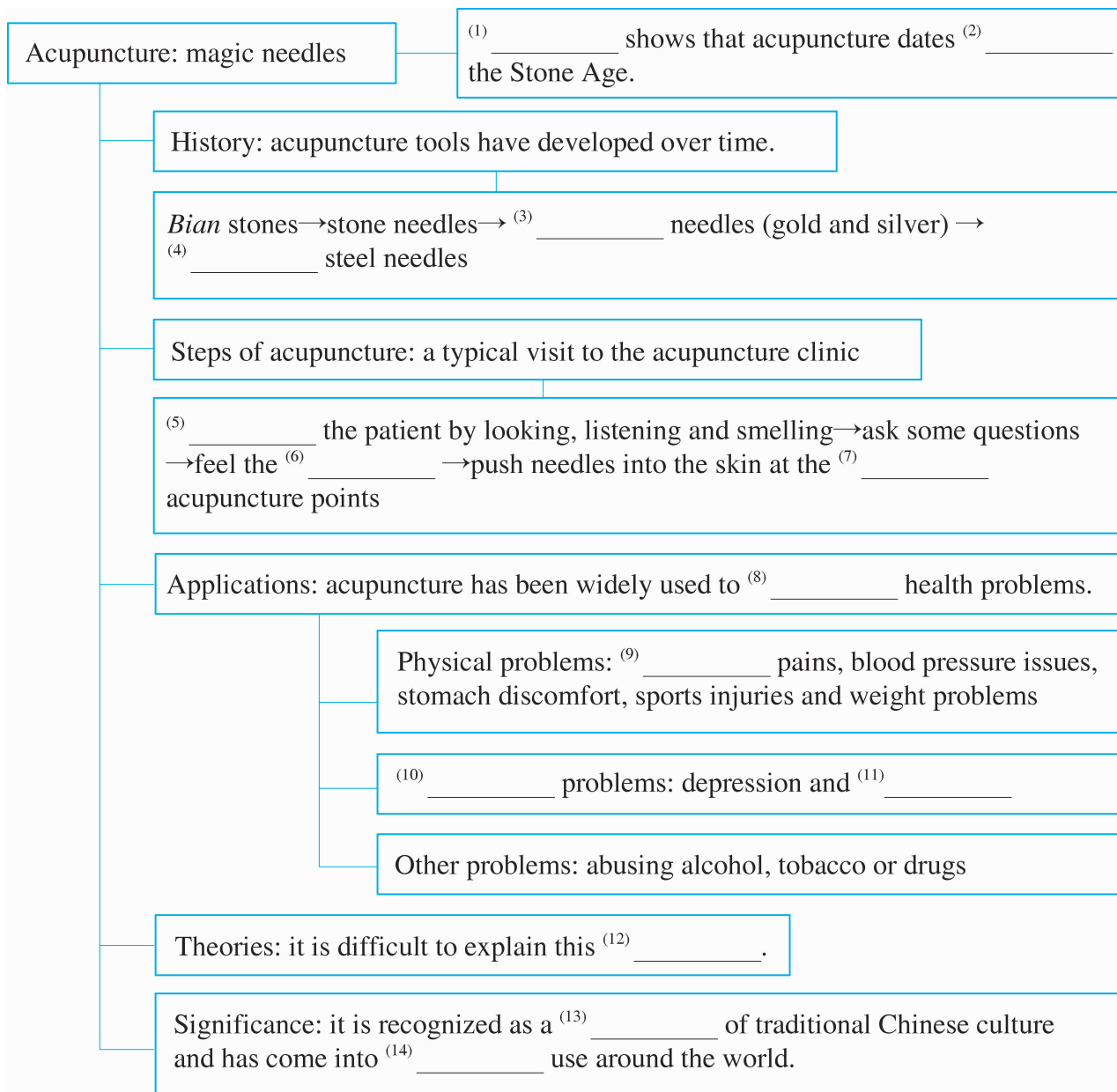
1. People \_\_\_\_\_ with HIV should go to the doctor regularly.
2. Flu is highly \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Being exposed to water increases the risk of \_\_\_\_\_.
4. It is not possible \_\_\_\_\_ another person through hugs.

[答案]

1. infected
2. infectious
3. infection
4. to infect

## 进阶 1: 基础巩固

一、根据 Extended reading 课文内容完成思维导图, 每空一词



## 二、微写作

根据 Extended reading 课文内容写一篇 60 词左右的内容概要。

---



---



---



---



---



## 进阶 2: 能力提升

### 一、根据首字母或中文提示完成句子

1. She has a toothache, so she refuses all s\_\_\_\_\_ food.
2. Jack is being treated at a small \_\_\_\_\_ (诊所).
3. The doctors e\_\_\_\_\_ her but could find nothing wrong.
4. The courts are becoming more \_\_\_\_\_ (严厉的) on young offenders.
5. A compass n\_\_\_\_\_ always points north.
6. The city is characterized by tall modern buildings in s\_\_\_\_\_ and glass.
7. What she did was a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ (滥用) of her position as manager.
8. Water, ice and steam are the same \_\_\_\_\_ (物质) in different forms.
9. White has always been a s\_\_\_\_\_ of purity in Western cultures.
10. The plan received \_\_\_\_\_ (广泛的) support throughout the country.

### 二、从方框内选择适当的词组,并用其正确形式填空

call for help	apply to	stick to	take the place of	recognize as
close to	up to now	more than	relate to	date back to

1. The first ancient Olympic Games could \_\_\_\_\_ 776 BCE.
2. The book has long been \_\_\_\_\_ a classic.
3. Some people predict that one day computers \_\_\_\_\_ human teachers.
4. Most workers hope that pay increases will \_\_\_\_\_ their performance.
5. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ happy to take you there in my car.
6. He promised to help us, and he \_\_\_\_\_ his word.
7. \_\_\_\_\_, we have known little about his situation.
8. The experiment is far from perfect. The scientists are not sure how much of it can \_\_\_\_\_ real life.
9. She turned the handle and \_\_\_\_\_, "I'm locked inside." But there was no response.
10. I was \_\_\_\_\_ tears as they told me the good news.

### 进阶 3: 综合拓展

#### 一、阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳选项

If you don't think twice about keeping germs (病菌) in the gym, here's something that may make you reconsider. In late 2017, fitness equipment review website Fitrated teamed up with EmLab P&K for a study on how much bacteria (细菌) is found on gym equipment.

\_\_\_\_\_ The experiment found that free weights have 362 times more germs, treadmills (跑步机) 74 times more, and exercise bikes carry more than 39 times the amount of bacteria you'll find on an average toilet seat. "Before joining a gym, you may want to ask about its cleaning practices to ensure things are being wiped down with bleach-based products on the regular," explains Tania Elliott, clinical instructor at NYU School of Medicine. "All-natural products may not be the best in this situation."

But don't completely rely on the staff. Most studios and commercial gyms have wipes readily available for members to wipe down equipment. "Use them," says Pete Van Zile, principal scientist at GlaxoSmithKline consumer health care, "especially during cold and flu season. Viruses can live on surfaces hours after an infected person touches them." Avoid touching your hands to your eyes, nose, and mouth mid-workout, and wash your hands immediately after you finish your session. Another germ-filled culprit: your cell phone. "Chances are you put your phone on the floor, or on a bench, or on another piece of possibly dirty equipment," explains Elliott. "You might wipe down machinery but not the phone that was on that sweaty, germ-y surface." Be sure to wash your face before your workout, but despite the urge, avoid using moisturizer (润肤霜). "If you use moisturizer, when you go to wipe away your sweat, that may cause acne (粉刺)," Elliott says. Moisturize post-workout after you clean your face again.

1. What can be filled in the blank at the beginning of Paragraph 2?
  - A. Work your right muscles.
  - B. Weekends are best suited.
  - C. You understand hard work.
  - D. The results are unpleasant.
2. Which of the following is true according to the underlined sentence?
  - A. Free weights have about 4.89 times more germs than treadmills.
  - B. Free weights have about 188 times more germs than treadmills.
  - C. Free weights have about 123 times more germs than exercise bikes.
  - D. Treadmills have about 35 times more germs than exercise bikes.



3. What does the underlined word “culprit” in Paragraph 3 probably mean?
- A. Very small drops of water present in the air.  
B. Something responsible for causing a problem.  
C. A machine you can run on while remaining in the same place.  
D. A body of water that is partly surrounded by land.
4. What is the author’s purpose of writing the passage?
- A. To teach people how to choose a right gym.  
B. To reveal the result of a study on gym equipment.  
C. To remind people of being careful of dirty gym equipment.  
D. To keep people healthy in a germ-filled world.

## 二、阅读下面短文,从短文后的选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项,选项中有两项为多余选项

It all started when my 20-minute workouts began feeling like 20-hour sessions. I was in desperate need of a change.

What? Did you think I was immune to motivational peaks and valleys because I work for a fitness magazine? <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Add family duties, sleep difficulties, plus not eating or drinking enough, and I can change into one bad-tempered, lazy and unhealthy man. <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. But as a 37-year-old married guy with a 14-month-old kid, I’m content so long as my wife doesn’t feel uncomfortable when she spots me. Nowadays, I need something more. <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

<sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, so mixed martial arts (综合格斗) training was out. A CrossFit competition? No, I needed a break from the gym. I landed on something that I felt would tax me physically, mentally, and spiritually and that would also allow me to have fun: competing in the Spartan Trifecta World Championships.

I had five weeks to train, so I had to rely on a mix of full-body routines and prioritized (按重要性排列的) conditioning (wearing a 40-pound weight vest and carrying a 35-pound sandbag on long runs). <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_—but I did finish. Mission accomplished.

- A. I’m not brave  
B. Now I own companies  
C. I regretted I wasn’t there  
D. I need a challenge that will force me to work hard  
E. The truth is, my job, just like yours, can be stressful  
F. In my 20s, I would normally depend on pride as one of my driving forces  
G. I didn’t earn a place on the platform or receive a standing applause in the end

## 每周巩固 2 Integrated skills—Project

### 一、根据首字母或中文提示填空

1. The French feel passionately about their native t\_\_\_\_\_.
2. There is a lot of e\_\_\_\_\_ that stress is partly responsible for disease.
3. Is she learning a musical \_\_\_\_\_ (乐器) now?
4. Most broken \_\_\_\_\_ (腕关节) heal within eight weeks with proper treatment.
5. All I get is a busy s\_\_\_\_\_ when I dial his number.
6. The human body has five special sense \_\_\_\_\_ (器官) which are of immense use to life.
7. D\_\_\_\_\_ use is an important risk factor for early death.
8. I can't work next weekend—will you s\_\_\_\_\_ with me?
9. This drink doesn't contain any \_\_\_\_\_ (酒精).
10. It is prohibited to advertise \_\_\_\_\_ (烟草) products in mass media, public places, on public transport and outdoors in that country.

### 二、用括号中所给单词的正确形式填空

1. She'll go to great \_\_\_\_\_ (long) to keep you from learning her secrets.
2. All students without exception must take this English \_\_\_\_\_ (examine).
3. Music seemed to quiet her \_\_\_\_\_ (anxious) and loneliness.
4. There are a lot of natural \_\_\_\_\_ (phenomenon) in the world.
5. Ear \_\_\_\_\_ (infect) are common in pre-school children.
6. The \_\_\_\_\_ (sense) information that our body receives forms the basis for our decision making.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ (resist) to change has nearly destroyed the industry.
8. There are no \_\_\_\_\_ (restrict) on the amount of money you can withdraw.

### 三、阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳选项

**STAY MARATHON-FIT!** Recent weeks have seen mass participation races such as the London Marathon postponed or cancelled due to the virus. This has been disappointing for runners who've poured so many hours into training. So, if your event has been postponed, what can you do in the meantime to maintain your fitness levels and adapt your training routine?

**1. STICK TO THE RULES** First and foremost, when you go for a run, pick a quiet location and time of day when there will be fewer people around. Run alone or with up to five companions and observe the two-metre distancing rule to avoid any possible transmission of coronavirus.

**2. INCREASE YOUR WORKOUTS** \_\_\_\_\_, which is good news for marathon training, which typically ranges from two hours for talented runners and up to four or five hours for beginners. If you've been doing shorter runs than usual due to previous guidelines, increasing the



intensity of your runs beyond your anaerobic threshold (无氧阈) will help you to run for longer at faster speeds and increase your mile pace. Increasing your frequency, meanwhile, running more days each week, will help to maintain your weekly distance of running. However, try to build up frequency and intensity, as well as distance, gradually, so your tissues have time to adapt to the increased loading.

**3. INCREASE YOUR TRAINING** Home exercise to add to your running sessions can include a range of training, from high-intensity interval training (HIIT) to strength training. HIIT can be done at home on an exercise bike, with short burst of maximal intensity repetitions and recovery periods. There's good evidence that it can improve longer-distance time-trial performance with both strength and other physical effects. Strength training can also be done indoors. Focus on the muscles required for running. Integrate your indoor moves before or after running, gradually increasing the length of the sessions. This will let your legs experience fatigue as they would in a long run, or the last stages of a marathon.

**4. FOCUS ON THE GOOD** Remember, although your race has been postponed, you're helping your community as a whole, and the pressure is off! Generally, your marathon place will be held for future, giving you more time to prepare. Use the time to improve your performance and speed, and address any strength shortage to reduce your risk of injury. It's easy to get stuck in a boring way of life with fixed and repetitive programmes, particularly with the long slow distance work of marathon training. Use the indoor time to be more creative with your training and learn about programme design, to keep your training fresh and prevent lack of motivation.

1. Why should people observe the two-metre distancing rule?
  - A. Because of the rules of training.
  - B. Because of the traffic.
  - C. Because of the location.
  - D. Because of the virus.
2. Which of the following sentences can be filled in the blank in the passage?
  - A. The government's current advice allows you to exercise as much as you like
  - B. Last year, the US female marathon athletes unexpectedly won the race
  - C. Keeping distance is one effective way to prevent the spread of infection
  - D. Earlier research suggested short runs are underestimated for improving your health
3. Which of the following words can best replace the underlined word "fatigue" in Paragraph 4?
  - A. Repetition.
  - B. Tiredness.
  - C. Recovery.
  - D. Happiness.
4. The last paragraph is intended to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. tell people that marathon training is boring
  - B. call on people to try to help their community
  - C. ask people to concentrate on the benefits of the present situation
  - D. inform people that marathon can build their bodies



## Unit 4 Living with technology

### Period 1 Welcome to the unit

阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳选项

China boosted the 5G industry by improving the capability of network coverage, application innovation and industrial base, an official said Tuesday.

With continuously increasing investment, China's 5G commercial development took solid steps in 2020, said Zhao Zhiguo, director of the cybersecurity management bureau of the Ministry of Industry and Information Technology, at a press conference.

By 2020, all cities above the prefecture-level (地级市) had full coverage of 5G networks, with more than 200 million 5G terminal (终端) connections and over 1,100 5G plus industrial internet projects, he added. "China will build more than 600,000 5G base stations in 2021, while promoting the 5G network coverage in a wider range and at more levels," Zhao said.

The country will foster (促进) emerging consumption models such as 5G plus VR/AR and immersive gaming and promote the integration (整合) of 5G technology into life services including health, elderly care and housekeeping.

"Continuous efforts will also be made to organize 5G millimetre wave tests, speed up the research and development of key technologies, shore (支撑) up the weak links and ensure the safety of the industrial and supply chains," said Zhao.

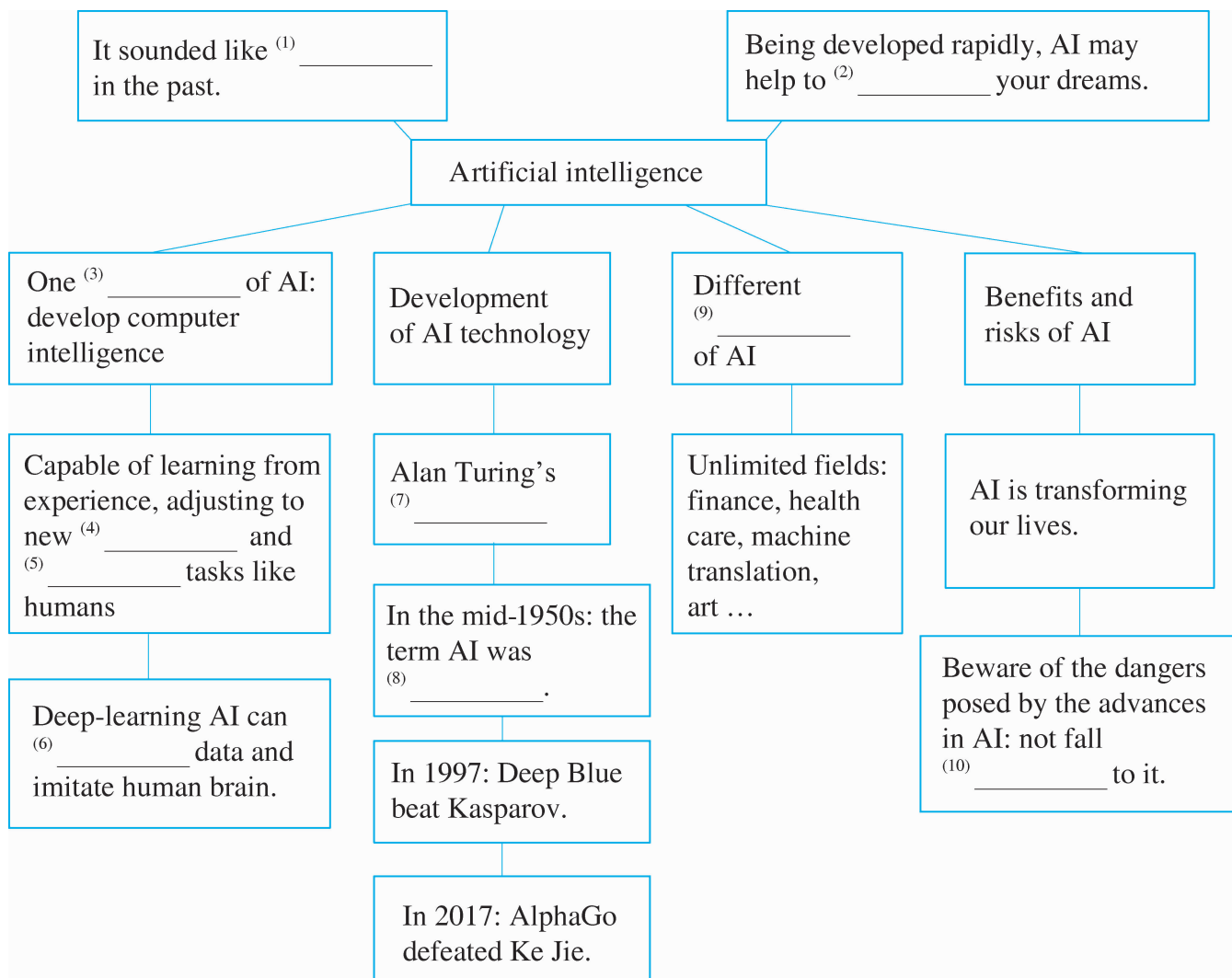
- Which is correct about 5G according to the passage?
  - China began to develop 5G at least from 2020.
  - China has built more than 600,000 5G base stations.
  - China will make no effort to test 5G millimetre wave.
  - By 2020, all the area in China had full coverage of 5G networks.
- Which of the following measures is NOT taken to develop 5G in China?
  - Increasing the capability of network coverage.
  - Raising application innovation.
  - Improving industrial base.
  - Collecting money from diverse industries.
- Which is the best title for the passage?
 

A. The usage of 5G	B. The advantages of 5G
C. The development of China's 5G	D. The diversity of China's industries

## Period 2 Reading (1)

### 进阶 1: 基础巩固

一、根据 Reading 课文内容完成思维导图, 每空一词



二、根据 Reading 课文内容填空, 每空一词

(1) \_\_\_\_\_, artificial intelligence is a branch of computer science that is (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to develop intelligent machines. One of the (3) \_\_\_\_\_ purposes of AI is to develop computer intelligence with the (4) \_\_\_\_\_ to learn from experience, make (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to new inputs and perform tasks like humans. To achieve this aim, many (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to creating true AI have been (7) \_\_\_\_\_, including “deep learning”, which enables a machine to improve its own performance by learning from the results of its (8) \_\_\_\_\_ actions. Deep-learning AI is able to conduct an (9) \_\_\_\_\_ of massive amounts of data through multiple layers, (10) \_\_\_\_\_ the same way as the networks of the human brain.

## 进阶 2: 综合拓展

阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳选项

The new social robots, including Jibo, Cozmo and Kuri, bear some resemblance (相似) to assistants like Apple's Siri, but they are designed to win us over not with their smarts but with their personality. *Time* magazine hailed (称赞) the robots that "could fundamentally reshape how we interact with machines". But is reshaping how we interact with machines a good thing, especially for children?

People have relationships with many kinds of things. Some say robots are just another thing with which we can have relationships. To support their argument, roboticists sometimes point to how children deal with toy dolls. Children animate (赋予……生命) dolls and turn them into imaginary friends. Jibo, in a sense, will be one more imaginary friend, and arguably a more intelligent and fun one.

Getting attached to dolls and sociable machines is different, though. Today's robots tell children that they have emotions, friendships, even dreams to share. In reality, the whole goal of the robots is emotional trickery. For instance, Cozmo the robot needs to be fed, repaired and played with. Researchers say that the idea is to create "a deeper and deeper emotional connection ... And if you neglect (忽略) him, you feel the pain of that." What is the point of this, exactly? What does it mean to feel the pain of neglecting something that feels no pain at being neglected?

This should not be our only concern. It is troubling that these robots try to empathize (产生共鸣) with children. Empathy allows us to put ourselves in the place of others, to know what they are feeling. Robots, however, have no emotions to share, and they cannot put themselves in our place. They present themselves as empathy machines, but they are missing the essential equipment. They have not been born, they don't know pain, or death, or fear.

- How are the new social robots different from Siri?
  - They are intended to be children's imaginary friends.
  - They are designed to attract people with their smarts.
  - Their main function is to judge children's personality.
  - They have a new way to communicate with human beings.
- In Paragraph 3, Cozmo is used as an example to show that the social robots \_\_\_\_\_.
  - are deeply connected with human beings
  - are unable to build a real relationship with children
  - are so advanced that they can feel the pain of human beings
  - are not good enough to carry out the instructions of children
- The underlined phrase "essential equipment" in Paragraph 4 refers to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - emotion
  - pain
  - fear
  - thinking



## Period 3 Reading (2)

**教材 P44** Imagine waking up one morning with the option of staying in bed and pressing a button to send a robot to do all the work for you. 想象一下,某天早晨你醒来,可以选择躺在床上按一下按钮,让一个机器人替你去做所有的工作。

**Point 1** *option n.* 选择;可选择的事物;选择权

★ 解析

one/another option is to do sth 一种/另一种选择是……

have no option but to do sth 别无选择只能做某事

Students have the option of studying abroad in their fourth year.

学生在第四学年时可以选择出国学习。

★ 拓展

optional *adj.* 可选择的,非强制的

**教材 P44** At the basic level, artificial intelligence is a branch of computer science that aims to create intelligent machines. 从基础层面上讲,人工智能是计算机科学的一个分支学科,其目标是研发智能机器。

**Point 2** *aim v.* 力求达到;目的是

★ 解析

The government is aiming to reduce unemployment by 40%. 政府正力求使失业人数下降40%。

I was aiming at the tree but hit the car by mistake. 我瞄准树射击,却误击中了这辆车。

The measures are aimed at preventing violent crime. 这些措施旨在防止暴力犯罪。

★ 拓展

aim *n.* 目的,目标

achieve one's aim 实现某人的目标

The aim/One's aim is to do 目的/某人的目的是做……

with the aim of doing 带着做……的目的

**教材 P45** Nowadays, AI is already being applied in many fields: finance, health care, machine translation and art, to name but a few. 现在,人工智能已经应用于很多领域,例如金融、医疗保健、机器翻译和艺术等,不一而足。

**Point 1**

完成句子

- I \_\_\_\_\_ (别无选择,只有请他离开) that day.
- She \_\_\_\_\_ (可以选择在国外逗留) for a year.

[答案]

- had no option but to ask him to leave
- has the option of staying abroad

**Point 2**

完成句子

- \_\_\_\_\_ (他的人生目标) is quite modest.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ (力争) finish the task today.
- These measures \_\_\_\_\_ (旨在减少) road accidents.
- She went to New York \_\_\_\_\_ (是为了找到一份工作).

[答案]

- His aim in life
- aim to
- are aimed at reducing
- with the aim of finding a job

**Point 3** to name but a few (表示列举)等等

## ★ 解析

Activities available include football, archery, and swimming, to name but a few. 所设活动项目包括足球、射箭、游泳等,不一而足。

## ★ 拓展

name sb sth 给某人取名为……

name sth after sb 以某人的名字命名……

They named their daughter Sarah. 他们给他们的女儿取名萨拉。

This street is named after the famous leader. 这条街是以那位著名领袖的名字命名的。

**教材 P45** As we become more and more dependent on computers, some scientists are urging us to think about the dangers posed by the advances in AI. 随着我们变得越来越依赖电脑,一些科学家正敦促我们思考人工智能发展带来的危险。

**Point 4** urge *vt.* 敦促,催促;大力推荐,竭力主张;驱赶

## ★ 解析

I got a letter from him urging me to get in touch. 我收到他的一封信,要我保持联系。

She urged me to stay with her. 她力劝我和她在一起。

urge that 竭力主张……(从句中要用 should 表示虚拟语气,should 可省略)

The report urged that all children (should) be taught to protect themselves. 这份报告呼吁所有的孩子都应学会保护自己。

## ★ 拓展

urge *n.* 强烈的欲望,冲动

have an urge to do sth 有做某事的冲动

She had an overwhelming urge to go to see her family. 她急切地想去看望她的家人。

**Point 5** pose *vt.* 造成,产生;提问,质询 *vi.* 摆好姿势 *n.* 姿势

## ★ 解析

pose a threat/challenge/danger/risk 构成威胁/挑战/危险/风险

This could pose a threat to jobs in the coal industry. 这可能对煤炭行业的就业造成威胁。

**Point 3**

用 name 的正确形式填空

- I like fruits, apple, pear, banana, \_\_\_\_\_ but a few.
- This child will \_\_\_\_\_ after his father.
- My mother insisted on \_\_\_\_\_ me Horace.

[答案]

- to name
- be named
- naming

**Point 4**

完成句子

- He once \_\_\_\_\_ (力劝) me \_\_\_\_\_ (接受) these conditions.
- She often \_\_\_\_\_ (恳求) that I \_\_\_\_\_ (支持) the girls in the match.
- They had a strong \_\_\_\_\_ (交流的渴望) with others.

[答案]

- urged; to accept
- urges; (should) support
- urge to communicate

**Point 5**

完成句子

- The task \_\_\_\_\_ (不会造成特别的问题).
- Before having the meeting,



The staff posed for a group photograph. 全体职员摆好姿势准备拍集体照。

a relaxed pose 悠闲的姿势 strike a pose 摆出姿态

**教材 P45** Apparently, such warnings demand our attention. We need to make sure that we will not fall victim to AI. 显然,这些警告需要引起我们的注意。我们必须保证我们不会成为人工智能的受害者。

**Point 6 demand vt.** 需要;强烈要求 *n.* 要求,所需之物;需求,需要

★ 解析

This sport demands both speed and strength. 这项运动既需要速度也需要体力。

I demand to see the manager of your department. 我坚决要求见你们部门经理。

The UN has demanded that all troops (should) be withdrawn without delay. 联合国已要求立刻撤出所有部队。(从句中要用虚拟语气)

a demand for sth 对……的要求  
meet/satisfy one's demands 满足……的要求  
in demand 需求大 on demand 一经要求

★ 拓展

demanding *adj.* (工作等)要求高的;(人)要求严格的

The book is demanding. 这本书读起来很费力。

a demanding boss 苛刻的老板

**Point 7 victim n.** 受害者,牺牲品;受骗者,祭品

★ 解析

fall victim to 受伤,受损,被害

Be careful not to fall victim to online banking fraud. 小心别成为网络银行诈骗案的受害者。

She was the innocent victim of the school bullying. 她是这起校园欺凌案的无辜受害者。

He was a victim of racial prejudice. 他是种族偏见的一个牺牲品。

a sacrificial victim 祭品

all the teachers \_\_\_\_\_  
(一起摆姿势合了影).

[答案]

1. poses no special problems
2. posed for a photograph

**Point 6**

完成句子

1. Human rights groups \_\_\_\_\_ (正强烈要求) an investigation into the shooting.
2. They demanded that working condition \_\_\_\_\_ (改善).
3. The factory tried every means \_\_\_\_\_ (满足不断增加的要求) from workers.
4. Good secretaries are always \_\_\_\_\_ (抢手).

[答案]

1. are demanding
2. (should) be improved
3. to meet/satisfy growing demands
4. in demand

**Point 7**

完成句子

1. Schools are \_\_\_\_\_ (首批牺牲品) of cuts in public spending.
2. Men under pressure at work are likely \_\_\_\_\_ (成为心脏病受害者).

[答案]

1. the first victims
2. to fall victim to heart disease

## 进阶 1: 基础巩固

### 一、根据首字母或中文提示填空

- All this information had to be \_\_\_\_\_ (输入) onto the computer.
- Each stadium has a seating c \_\_\_\_\_ of about 50,000.
- We won't announce the result of the experiment until we have a \_\_\_\_\_ those samples.
- Jaron Lanier c \_\_\_\_\_ the term "virtual reality" and pioneered its early development.
- Scientists have made a major b \_\_\_\_\_ in the fight against COVID-19.
- Parents should actively u \_\_\_\_\_ their children to seize the opportunity to join sports teams.
- He paused, \_\_\_\_\_ (显然) lost in thought.
- So far, they \_\_\_\_\_ (造成) a serious threat to the environment we live in.
- Women are still the main victims of \_\_\_\_\_ (家庭的) violence.
- There are \_\_\_\_\_ (可供替代的) sources of nutrition to animal meat.

### 二、用括号中所给单词的正确形式填空

- The ball is \_\_\_\_\_ (mass), weighing over 60 tons.
- Laurie ate the cookies \_\_\_\_\_ (greedy) and with huge enjoyment.
- The work is physically \_\_\_\_\_ (demand), so only a strong man can do it.
- Wildlife has been greatly \_\_\_\_\_ (threat) in the modern age.
- Self-directed learners always act \_\_\_\_\_ (autonomous) or independently.
- Tokyo and New York are two major \_\_\_\_\_ (finance) centres of the world.
- Her unusual talent gained her worldwide \_\_\_\_\_ (recognize).
- His \_\_\_\_\_ (warn) was still ringing in my ears.

### 三、根据中文提示完成句子

- You'd better stop \_\_\_\_\_ (空想) and get down to some practical work.
- Recently, scientists \_\_\_\_\_ (已取得了重大突破) the treatment of cancer, bringing great hopes to those patients.
- Bees, bats and rodents (啮齿动物), \_\_\_\_\_ (不一而足), can see the light which humans can't—ultraviolet light (紫外线).
- \_\_\_\_\_ (越来越担心) over the safety of the missing teenager.
- A mistake you've made doesn't have to \_\_\_\_\_ (意味着结束) times for you.
- Such advertisements should be forbidden, otherwise more people may \_\_\_\_\_ (成为牺牲品) them.
- There was no one nearby who might see him trying \_\_\_\_\_ (强行闯入) the house.



## 进阶 2: 能力提升

### 一、同义句转换

1. Under such circumstances, you can do nothing but stay at home.

Under such circumstances, you \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ at home.

2. Considering the uncertainty over my future, I have to get well prepared for everything.

\_\_\_\_\_ the uncertainty over my future, I have to get well prepared for everything.

\_\_\_\_\_ my future is uncertain, I have to get well prepared for everything.

\_\_\_\_\_ the uncertainty over my future, I have to get well prepared for everything.

3. In the future, such dreams of using AI in our daily life may actually become a reality.

In the future, such dreams of \_\_\_\_\_ AI \_\_\_\_\_ our daily life may actually \_\_\_\_\_.

4. They demanded to raise their wages by 10 per cent.

They demanded that their wages \_\_\_\_\_ by 10 per cent.

5. Deep-learning AI has the capacity to analyse massive amounts of data through multiple layers, imitating the complex networks of the human brain.

Deep-learning AI \_\_\_\_\_ analysing massive amounts of data through multiple layers, imitating the complex networks of the human brain.

### 二、根据中文提示完成句子

1. 好像无论他做什么,他的老板都会对他有更多的要求。

It seemed that no matter what he did, his boss \_\_\_\_\_ him.

2. 听说你与舍友相处不融洽,对此我感到非常遗憾。

I'm very sorry to hear that you cannot \_\_\_\_\_ yourself \_\_\_\_\_ your roommates.

3. 他触犯了法律,现在必须就自己的行为承担后果。

He broke the law and now he must \_\_\_\_\_ of his actions.

4. 网上购物相对于开车去商店来说是一个更便捷的选择,因为它能节省时间。

Shopping online is \_\_\_\_\_ driving to the store, because it can save time.

### 三、微写作

新一代人工智能给人类经济、社会与生活带来颠覆性影响,但有科学家警告称,15年内人工智能将夺走人类现在一半的工作。你不赞同此观点,请陈述自己的理由。60词左右。

With the development of the new generation of AI, it has become a game-changer in the aspects of our economy, society, and life. Despite the warning from some scientists that half of current jobs will be taken over by AI within 15 years, I have different ideas as follows.

---



---



---



---



---



---

### 进阶 3: 综合拓展

阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳选项

The Internet has completely changed the workplace over the past three decades. Artificial intelligence is now all set to do the same, and businesses that don't take advantage of the technology risk being left behind.

Businesses of all sizes are now using the technology for employing and managing their staff. Among them is a cosmetic company. With about a million applicants for roughly 15,000 new positions each year, the company is using AI to hire.

"We really wanted to save time and focus more on quality, diversity and candidate (申请人) experience. And AI solutions were the best way to go faster on these challenges," said Eva Azoulay, global vice president of the company's Human Resources Department.

The company uses Mya, a chatbot, to save employers' time during the first stage of the process. It handles routine questions from candidates, and checks details such as availability and visa requirements. Should candidates make it to the next round, they'll run into Seedlink, an AI software that scores applicants based on their answers to open-ended interview questions. These scores don't replace human judgement, said Azoulay, but they do pick out candidates who might not seem like obvious choices.

Early results have been promising. For one internship programme, where 12,000 people apply for about 80 spots, employers claim they saved 200 hours while hiring the most diverse group to date.

Other businesses have gone beyond employment and are using AI to help manage employees. Some UK firms have started using Isaak, a system designed by the London-based company StatusToday, to track how many hours staff spend online and the number of emails they receive. London real estate agent (房地产经纪人) James Brown has been using this system since March. He



said it helps the firm understand employees' habits and prevent them from overworking. "It enables us to solve bottleneck problems and relieve overburdened employees," he said.

Despite these examples of good practice, there is still a long way for AI to reach its full potential, and the technology comes with risks.

1. What can we learn about AI technology from Paragraph 1?
  - A. It causes a great problem in workplace.
  - B. It will replace the Internet in the future.
  - C. It requires businesses to invest much money.
  - D. It will become a necessary part of business.
2. The cosmetic company uses AI in its hiring process to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. pick out the most suitable candidates directly
  - B. come up with more questions unlimitedly
  - C. improve the company's hiring efficiency
  - D. save money by replacing human judgement
3. Firms with the system Isaak can \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. prevent their employees from surfing the Internet
  - B. force their employees to form good working habits
  - C. monitor the contents of all their employees' emails
  - D. help their employees avoid being overstressed at work
4. The passage is mainly developed by \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. setting examples
  - B. making comparisons
  - C. examining differences
  - D. following the time order

## Period 4 Grammar and usage

### 将来进行时

#### 一、将来进行时的概念

将来进行时表示将来某一时间正在进行的动作,也可表示安排要做或预计会发生的事情。

#### 二、将来进行时的形式

将来进行时由“be 动词的将来时+现在分词”构成,具体形式见下表:

人称	单数	复数
第一人称	I shall/will be doing.	We shall/will be doing.
第二人称	You will be doing.	You will be doing.
第三人称	He/She/It will be doing.	They will be doing.

#### 三、将来进行时的用法

将来进行时有很强的推测性,往往用在以下几种场合中。

1. 表示将来某一时间正在进行的动作,一般带状语。例如:

What will you be doing at this time next Monday?

When he comes to my house tomorrow, I will be writing the report.

2. 表示现在正在进行的动作,而且这个动作会延续到将来。例如:

I wonder if it will still be raining this afternoon.

I think that she will be working on this experiment until next morning.

3. 表示安排要做或预计会发生的事情。例如:

Tomorrow I will be flying to Bombay.

After you take the medicine, you will be feeling much better.

4. 表示原因。例如:

Please come tomorrow afternoon. Tomorrow morning, I'll be having a meeting.

5. 表示结果。例如:

Stop the child, or he will be falling over.

6. 表示对将来的打算(区别于对将来的预测)。例如:

My duties will end in July, and I'll be returning to Beijing.

#### 四、将来进行时与现在完成进行时的区别

1. 以下顺口溜可以帮大家更好地理解将来进行时:将来某时正进行,预计不久要发生;通常用在口语中,语气委婉顿生情。例如:



I will be waiting for the plane at 10 a.m. tomorrow morning.

I'll be doing homework this time tomorrow.

He'll be studying at school next year.

2. 现在完成进行时,表示动作从过去某一时间开始,一直持续到现在,或者刚刚终止,或者仍然要继续下去。其结构为:主语+助动词(have/has)+been+动词的现在分词。

(1) 表示从过去某时开始一直持续到现在的动作,可能还将持续下去。

They have been living in this city for ten years.

(2) 表示从过去某时开始一直持续到说话前的动作。

Finally, you are here. We have been waiting for you for half an hour.

## 进阶 1: 基础巩固

### 一、根据首字母或中文提示填空

- The map shows the d\_\_\_\_\_ of this species all over the world.
- It is impossible to p\_\_\_\_\_ what the eventual outcome will be.
- People who are overweight should d\_\_\_\_\_ the amount of fat they eat.
- He was unable to d\_\_\_\_\_ the charges (指控) in the face of new evidence.
- Before he died, he had consumed a large q\_\_\_\_\_ of alcohol.
- Drugs pose a major \_\_\_\_\_ (威胁) to our society.
- When parents \_\_\_\_\_ (窥探) on their kids, it gives kids a reason to think that they are not trusted.
- Police searched their house for \_\_\_\_\_ (非法的) arms.
- The computer will then \_\_\_\_\_ (监视) all of the car's movements.
- The policeman fined the man and suspended his driving \_\_\_\_\_ (执照).

### 二、根据中文提示完成句子

- 一次性大量购买日常必需品通常是经济实惠的。  
It is usually economical to buy daily necessities \_\_\_\_\_ one time.
- 如果某场火灾对人没有严重的威胁,消防队员可以让它自然燃烧。  
If a fire is not \_\_\_\_\_, firefighters may let it burn naturally.
- 不可否认,英语是世界上使用最普遍的一种语言。  
\_\_\_\_\_ English is a most widespread language in the world.
- 在不久的将来,无人机将被更广泛地应用在各个领域。  
Drones will \_\_\_\_\_ in various fields in the near future.
- 可以肯定的是,随着技术变得更加先进,更多的无人机将会飞行在天空。  
\_\_\_\_\_ as technology gets more advanced, more drones \_\_\_\_\_ in the sky.

## 三、用括号中所给单词的正确形式填空

- When can I see you, Mr Black? Three o'clock this afternoon?  
—Oh, no. I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a meeting then.
- I'm sorry that I can't answer your phone call at 3:00 this afternoon because I \_\_\_\_\_ (teach) a class at that time.
- By nine o'clock last night, we \_\_\_\_\_ (get) 200 pictures from the spaceship.
- At this time tomorrow, I \_\_\_\_\_ (fly) to London.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) at the bus stop for 20 minutes when a bus finally came.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ (lie) on one of the sunny beaches in Hawaii all day when he spends his holiday there.
- All these days he \_\_\_\_\_ (write) articles to our magazine.
- Nobody knew what \_\_\_\_\_ (happen) to the Earth in a century's time.
- Mr Lee said he would give the CD to me as soon as he \_\_\_\_\_ (return) from Canada.
- When we were young, Father \_\_\_\_\_ (take) us for a special treat on Mother's Day.
- Did you invite Sarah to your birthday party?  
—Sorry, I forgot. I \_\_\_\_\_ (call) her now.
- You have to put in more effort if you are \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) the test.

## 进阶 2: 能力提升

## 一、同义句转换

- Although drones can perform all the wonderful functions, they may also cause trouble to airlines.  
\_\_\_\_\_ all the wonderful functions \_\_\_\_\_, they may also cause trouble to airlines.
- Some people make a prediction that before long people will be using drones to deliver daily supplies.  
\_\_\_\_\_ before long people will be using drones to deliver daily supplies.
- There is no denying that China is playing an important part in the world.  
\_\_\_\_\_ China is playing an important part in the world.
- We can assume that with improved technology applied to passenger drones, we will be entering the age of personal flying vehicles.



\_\_\_\_\_ improved technology \_\_\_\_\_ passenger drones, we will be entering the age of personal flying vehicles.

## 二、从括号内选择正确的表达填空

- The weather report says that it \_\_\_\_\_ (will be raining/has been raining) when we arrive in Nanjing.
- I believe that they \_\_\_\_\_ (had been working on/will be working on) this experiment until next morning.
- Toby will not be in London next Tuesday. He \_\_\_\_\_ (will be attending/will attend) a ceremony in Paris.
- They \_\_\_\_\_ (have been studying abroad/will be studying abroad) for five years.
- Daniel's family \_\_\_\_\_ (had stayed seven days/have been staying seven days) in Huangshan by the end of last weekend.
- Can we meet tomorrow morning?  
—Not in the morning, I'm afraid. I \_\_\_\_\_ (will be working/have been working).

## 三、微写作

设想一个班的学生现在正坐在教室里,他们在听录音。明天是星期六,没有课。明天这个时候他们不在教室里,有些学生会坐在电影院里看电影。有些会做别的事情:比尔会在打网球,安会去买东西,乔治会还在吃早饭。请使用正确的时态用英语写出这段文字。60词左右。

---



---



---



---

## 进阶3: 综合拓展

阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项

The networked computer serves as the mode of production (you can make stuff), means of distribution (you can upload stuff to the network), and site of   1   (you can download stuff and interact with it).   2  , the computer is the 21st century's culture machine.

But for all the reasons there are to   3   the computer, we must act with caution, because the networked computer has started a secret war between downloading and uploading—between passive consumption and active   4  —whose outcome will shape our future in ways we can only begin to imagine.



Humans are 5 in their capacity to not only make tools but then use them to create material goods (paintings, sculpture and architecture) and experiences (music, literature, religion and philosophy). 6, it is precisely these superfluous (多余的) things that define human culture and ultimately what it is to be human. Downloading and consuming culture requires great skills, but 7 to move beyond downloading is to rob oneself of a defining ingredient of humanity.

Despite the possibilities of our new culture machines, most people are still 8 download mode, brought about by television watching. Even after the 9 of widespread social media, a pyramid of production remains, with a small number of people uploading material, and a huge percentage remaining satisfied to just 10.

The networked computer offers the first chance in fifty years to 11 the trend caused by TV viewing, to encourage thoughtful downloading and meaningful uploading. The computer offers the opportunity to bring about a complete 12 from the culture of television. Fifty years of television dominance (主导) has given birth to an unhealthy culture. The 13 is now in our grasp. It involves controlling our intake, or downloading, and 14 our levels of activity—uploading.

Using the networked computer as a download-only device is a 15 opportunity that history affords us. Therefore, the goal must be to establish a balance between consumption and production.

- |                        |                    |                  |                |
|------------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. A. celebration      | B. conversations   | C. reception     | D. ceremonies  |
| 2. A. Without doubt    | B. In return       | C. In particular | D. By contrast |
| 3. A. liberate         | B. celebrate       | C. concern       | D. reject      |
| 4. A. request          | B. support         | C. defense       | D. creation    |
| 5. A. unique           | B. familiar        | C. efficient     | D. loyal       |
| 6. A. In addition      | B. In fact         | C. For instance  | D. By the way  |
| 7. A. striving         | B. comparing       | C. failing       | D. attempting  |
| 8. A. optimistic about | B. unfamiliar with | C. stuck in      | D. ashamed of  |
| 9. A. transformation   | B. appearance      | C. meeting       | D. growth      |
| 10. A. consume         | B. neglect         | C. combine       | D. innovate    |
| 11. A. enhance         | B. quicken         | C. change        | D. extend      |
| 12. A. outcome         | B. exposure        | C. break         | D. evolution   |
| 13. A. puzzle          | B. cure            | C. regret        | D. favour      |
| 14. A. analyzing       | B. maintaining     | C. featuring     | D. increasing  |
| 15. A. wasted          | B. treasured       | C. multiplied    | D. revised     |

**每周巩固 1 Welcome to the unit—Grammar and usage****一、根据首字母或中文提示填空**

1. More career opportunities will be created as the company expands d\_\_\_\_\_ and internationally.
2. Do you know that a crime is \_\_\_\_\_ (犯罪) every 25 seconds in the USA?
3. He took a part-time job to \_\_\_\_\_ (提供资金) his further education in America.
4. He treated us as a \_\_\_\_\_ individuals who had to learn to make up our own minds about things.
5. Police are investigating the t\_\_\_\_\_ of a famous painting from the museum's offices.

**二、用括号中所给单词的正确形式填空**

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ (murder) was finally caught and put to death.
2. The government issued an official \_\_\_\_\_ (deny) that there would be an election soon.
3. For instance, as we all know, dogs \_\_\_\_\_ (recognition) each other by means of smell.
4. He was unwilling to make a \_\_\_\_\_ (predict) for the coming year.
5. The book is an \_\_\_\_\_ (analyse) of poverty and its causes.

**三、阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出最佳选项**

Google says it will no longer permit its artificial intelligence, or AI technology to be used in any activities involving weapons. The policy was one of several new principles aimed at guiding the company's development and sale of AI technology and tools.

Kirk Hanson is the director of the Markkula Centre for Applied Ethics. The centre examines how ethics can be used as guidelines for technology development. He decided that the policy was based on fears that AI technology could lead to the creation of weapons which might cause disasters to humans.

“If you have artificial intelligence which identifies targets and automatically launches (发射) weapons, you have an autonomous weapon. Just as with driverless vehicles, autonomous weapon systems may not be as safe as their supporters' promise. We should be more concerned about how an autonomous weapon might make a mistake. And until we have trust that those systems will not make mistakes, we're going to keep skeptical (怀疑的) about the use of artificial intelligence.”

A top Department of Defense official was asked about the use of autonomous weapons during an event last year at the Centre for Strategic and International Studies in Washington. Air Force General Paul Joseph Selva said such systems should never be used to replace human commanders.

Google said the company does not plan to stop providing AI technology for all military uses. It will seek government projects in areas such as military training, Internet security and search and rescue.

1. What new policy has Google announced about its AI technology?
  - A. To expand its application fields.
  - B. To absorb advanced technologies.
  - C. To encourage its exchange activities.
  - D. To restrict serving military purposes.





## Period 5 Integrated skills

### 进阶 1: 基础巩固

#### 一、根据首字母或中文提示填空

- W\_\_\_\_\_ is grown in places which have cold winters and warm, dry summers.
- The museum contains 6,000 c\_\_\_\_\_ and modern artworks.
- What he said planted a s\_\_\_\_\_ of doubt in my mind.
- They found a mysterious box b\_\_\_\_\_ beneath a pile of leaves.
- I've \_\_\_\_\_ (使醒目) the important passages in yellow.
- Tourism is a \_\_\_\_\_ (源泉) of wealth for the city.
- Like most athletes, he was lean and \_\_\_\_\_ (肌肉强健的).
- Finally, he \_\_\_\_\_ (结束) by wishing everyone a safe trip home.

#### 二、从方框内选择适当的词组,并用其正确形式填空

a variety of    be rich in    gain superiority over    be justified in    relieve from

- There are \_\_\_\_\_ tourist attractions and historical sites in our city.
- This area is known to \_\_\_\_\_ natural resources.
- With such large losses I would not \_\_\_\_\_ leaving matters as they are.
- Keep in touch with your parents as often as possible so as to \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ anxiety.
- They worked very hard \_\_\_\_\_ their opponents.

#### 三、根据中文提示完成句子

- 这个时间胶囊里装满了各种物品,旨在展示当时美国的生活状况。  
This time capsule was filled with various objects that \_\_\_\_\_ show what life was like in America at that time.
- 共享单车是为全民分享而设计的。  
Shared-bikes \_\_\_\_\_ by all citizens.
- 职业运动员总是带着一种骄傲且合乎情理的优越感参加比赛。  
Professional sportsmen always take part in the competition with \_\_\_\_\_.
- 他的留言沾染了他所生活的那个黑暗时代的色彩。  
His message \_\_\_\_\_ the dark times \_\_\_\_\_.
- 我们的时代不乏创造性头脑,他们的发明使得我们的生活变得容易得多。  
Our time is rich in \_\_\_\_\_, the inventions of \_\_\_\_\_ could make our lives \_\_\_\_\_.

## 进阶 2: 能力提升

### 听力训练

#### 第一节

听下面 5 段对话。每段对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。每段对话仅读一遍。

- What will the man do first?  
A. Learn more about prices.      B. Buy a new drone.      C. Finish his homework.
- When will the meeting be held?  
A. At 11:30.      B. At 12:00.      C. At 1:00.
- Why is the woman leaving work early?  
A. To have her computer mended.  
B. To post a package.  
C. To pick up a car.
- What are the speakers talking about in general?  
A. A trip to the World's Fair.  
B. Food in Shanghai.  
C. The weather in Shanghai.
- What relation is the man to the woman?  
A. Her customer.      B. Her co-worker.      C. Her boss.

#### 第二节

听下面两段对话或独白。每段对话或独白后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。每段对话或独白读两遍。

听第 6 段材料,回答第 6、7 题。

- When does the man decide to return?  
A. On Saturday the 10th.      B. On Sunday the 11th.      C. On Friday the 10th.
- How long will the flight take?  
A. Two and a half hours.      B. Three hours.      C. Three and a half hours.

听第 7 段材料,回答第 8 至 10 题。

- What was done to find the amount of housework men do?  
A. A question was asked to husbands.  
B. A group was set up to interview people.  
C. A survey was made to both men and women.
- Who helped most at home?  
A. Danish husbands.      B. British husbands.      C. Italian husbands.



10. What can we learn from the report?
- A. Housework should be shared between men and women.
  - B. More than 50% of Danish men helped in the house.
  - C. Danish men were more afraid of their wives.

## 写作训练

### 一、写作指导

应试书信常含有三个段落：开头段、主体段、结尾段。

段落	思路点拨	语言积累
开头段	问候	How are you doing? How is everything going?
	自我介绍	I am Li Hua, a 17-year-old boy currently studying in XXX middle school. I am Li Hua, who ... As monitor of our class, I ...
	写信背景	I heard that .../My teacher told us .../I am informed that .../I learned that ... I read in your newspaper/micro-blog/website that ... You said in your last letter that ...
	写信目的	Now, I am writing to ... Now, I am writing these few lines to ....
主体段： 具体问题 (主题句)+ 具体分析 (拓展句)	申请信：写自己的优势	There are four main reasons why I am fit for the position/job. To begin with, ... Moreover, ... What's more, ... Finally, ... I have three main advantages. First and foremost, ... Additionally, ... Last but not least, ... I have the confidence that I can handle the job. Firstly, ... Secondly, ... Thirdly, ...
	建议信：写给对方的具体建议	There are several simple suggestions for you. To begin with, ... Moreover, ... What's more, ... Finally, ... Immediate and effective measures must be put into practice. First and foremost, ... Additionally, ... Last but not least, ... The following suggestions carried out, things would probably become much better. Firstly, ... Secondly, ... Thirdly, ...

(续表)

段落	思路点拨	语言积累
结尾段	申请信	Hopefully the chance would be offered to me. If chosen/elected, I would dedicate all my energy and wisdom to the company/activity/club/class. Thank you for reading my letter/listening to my speech in such a hot summer. Looking forward to your reply at your earliest convenience. I won't let you down.
	建议信	Hopefully these suggestions will be of help to you. If there is anything else I can do for you, please let me know as soon as possible. I'm sure you can solve your problem before long.

二、假定你是李华,你的英国朋友彼得来信向你咨询如何才能学好中文。请你根据下列要点写回信,内容包括:

1. 参加中文学习班;
2. 看中文书刊、电视;
3. 交中国朋友。

注意:

1. 词数 80 左右;
2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

---



---



---



---

### 进阶 3: 综合拓展

一、阅读下面短文,从短文后的选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项,选项中有两项为多余选项

With the development of AI technology, some special smartphone apps can benefit us a lot in learning another language. <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Many of us have to endure hours of school lessons with our heads buried in textbooks. It's no wonder that the technology appears to be providing a better way of learning.

Having a smartphone means you can have a virtual teacher with you wherever you go, and there is certainly a huge demand for language learning apps. Many app developers are keen to cash in on the demand, hoping to share a piece of the app market. <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ One of many popular apps, Duolingo, offers 91 courses in 30 languages and has more than 300 million users.

<sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ They offer languages not popular enough to be taught at evening classes, or at





most universities. Whatever you want to learn, apps allow you to go at your own pace and fit learning around other commitments. But they're not perfect—lacking the peer support you could get in a classroom environment is a challenge, too.

So, does technology spell the end of traditional classrooms and teachers? Guy Baron, Head of Modern Languages at Aberystwyth University, thinks not. He told the BBC that the apps are very conversational and they're not designed for degrees, but they could be additional resources. <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

Certainly the technology is going to help in and outside the classroom. But motivation can be a problem when using an app. <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Of course, if you have a genuine reason to learn another language, you will no doubt stick with it.

- A. There are numerous learning apps available.
- B. Some educational apps are targeted at specific small groups.
- C. A coming message may easily get distracted from your online lessons.
- D. The content may be not what you really want and it is quite a waste of time.
- E. Attending a real lesson, facing a real teacher, probably helps you to be more devoted.
- F. Apps should be used alongside classroom methods, not separated from traditional teaching.
- G. It opens doors, makes you more employable, helps you make new friends, and it's fun too.

## 二、阅读下面短文,在空白处填入 1 个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式

China has recently published its first artificial intelligence (AI) textbook for high school students, following a plan by the central government last year <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (include) AI courses in primary and secondary schools.

Under the joint efforts by the research centre for MOOC at East China Normal University and AI Startup SenseTime Group, the nine-chapter textbook, <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (name) *Fundamentals of Artificial Intelligence*, was written by famous scholars from well-known schools nationwide, Xinhua <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (report) on Sunday.

It includes the history of AI and how the technology can <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (apply) in areas such as facial recognition, auto driving and public security. "The textbook focuses not only on basics of AI, also on <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (practice) use of AI in daily life," said Chen Yukun, <sup>(6)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ is a contributor to the book, also a professor at East China Normal University. So far, about 40 high schools across the country <sup>(7)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (join) the first group of AI high education pilot programme, <sup>(8)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ introducing the textbook into the curriculum.

"The AI sector (行业) is facing a talent shortage <sup>(9)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (global). The publication of the book is <sup>(10)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ breakthrough as it takes AI technology out of the 'ivory tower' and makes it part of high school learning," said Lin Dahua, a professor at the Chinese University of Hong Kong.

## Period 6 Extended reading & Project

**教材 P53** Frank, you've been working at the forefront of developments in virtual reality for many years. 弗兰克,你已经在虚拟现实技术开发的最前沿工作了好多年。

### Point 1 at the forefront of 处于最前列,进入重要地位

#### ★ 解析

His team are at the forefront of scientific research into vaccines. 他的小组处于疫苗科研的最前沿。

#### ★ 拓展

in/to the forefront of 处于最前列,进入重要地位

The new product took the company to the forefront of the computer software field. 该新产品使这家公司跻身计算机软件业的前列。

**教材 P53** The basic definition of VR lies in the name itself, which means “reality that is not real”. 虚拟现实的基本定义就在其名字本身中,它的意思是“不真实的现实”。

### Point 2 lie in 存在于

#### ★ 解析

The roots of this feeling may lie in our childhood. 这种感觉的根源可能在于我们的童年。

#### ★ 拓展

lie in 早上晚起,睡懒觉

**教材 P53** When you wear a VR headset equipped with sensors and a screen, you are surrounded by three-D images, sounds and other sensory information. 当你戴上装有传感器和屏幕的虚拟现实头盔,你就会被三维图像、声音和其他感觉信息包围了。

### Point 3 equip sb/sth with sth 用……装备某人/物

#### ★ 解析

They spent a lot of money equipping the school with new computers. 他们花了很多钱给学校配备了新的计算机。

#### ★ 拓展

equip sb for sth 使某人能够胜任某事

### Point 1

#### 完成句子

1. They \_\_\_\_\_  
(处于……的前沿) the Green Movement.
2. Climate change has been pushed \_\_\_\_\_  
(公众关注的前沿).

#### [答案]

1. are at the forefront of
2. to the forefront of public attention

### Point 2

#### 翻译句子

1. 问题出在手段而不是结果。  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. 明天你可以睡懒觉。  
\_\_\_\_\_

#### [答案]

1. The problem lies in the means, not the ends.
2. You can lie in tomorrow.

### Point 3

#### 完成句子

1. The rooms \_\_\_\_\_ (装上了) video cameras.
2. Tom received the training to \_\_\_\_\_ (使自己胜任工作).



The course is designed to equip students for a career in nursing.  
此课程旨在使学生能够胜任护理工作。

**教材 P53** By delivering the content in a meaningful way, this new approach to learning manages to engage students' interest and enhance learning efficiency. 通过用一种富有意义的方式来呈现内容, 这种新的学习方法能够吸引学生的兴趣, 提高学习效率。

**Point 4** **engage v.** 吸引住(注意力、兴趣); 雇用; 与……建立密切关系

★ 解析

It is a movie that engages both the mind and the eye of the children. 这是一部令孩子们赏心悦目的影片。

engage in (doing) sth 参加某事

engage sb to do sth 雇用某人做某事

He has never engaged in UN peacekeeping missions. 他从来没有参加过联合国维和行动。

Her father engaged a tutor to improve her English. 她爸爸雇了一位家庭教师帮她提高英语。

★ 拓展

engaged *adj.* 忙于; 从事于; 已订婚的

engaging *adj.* 有趣的; 令人愉快的; 迷人的

engagement *n.* 订婚; 约定

[答案]

1. are equipped with
2. equip himself for the job

**Point 4**

完成句子

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ (订婚) a nice young woman two weeks ago.
2. They never learned skills \_\_\_\_\_ (吸引注意力) others.
3. They are currently \_\_\_\_\_ (忙于) an important business call.

[答案]

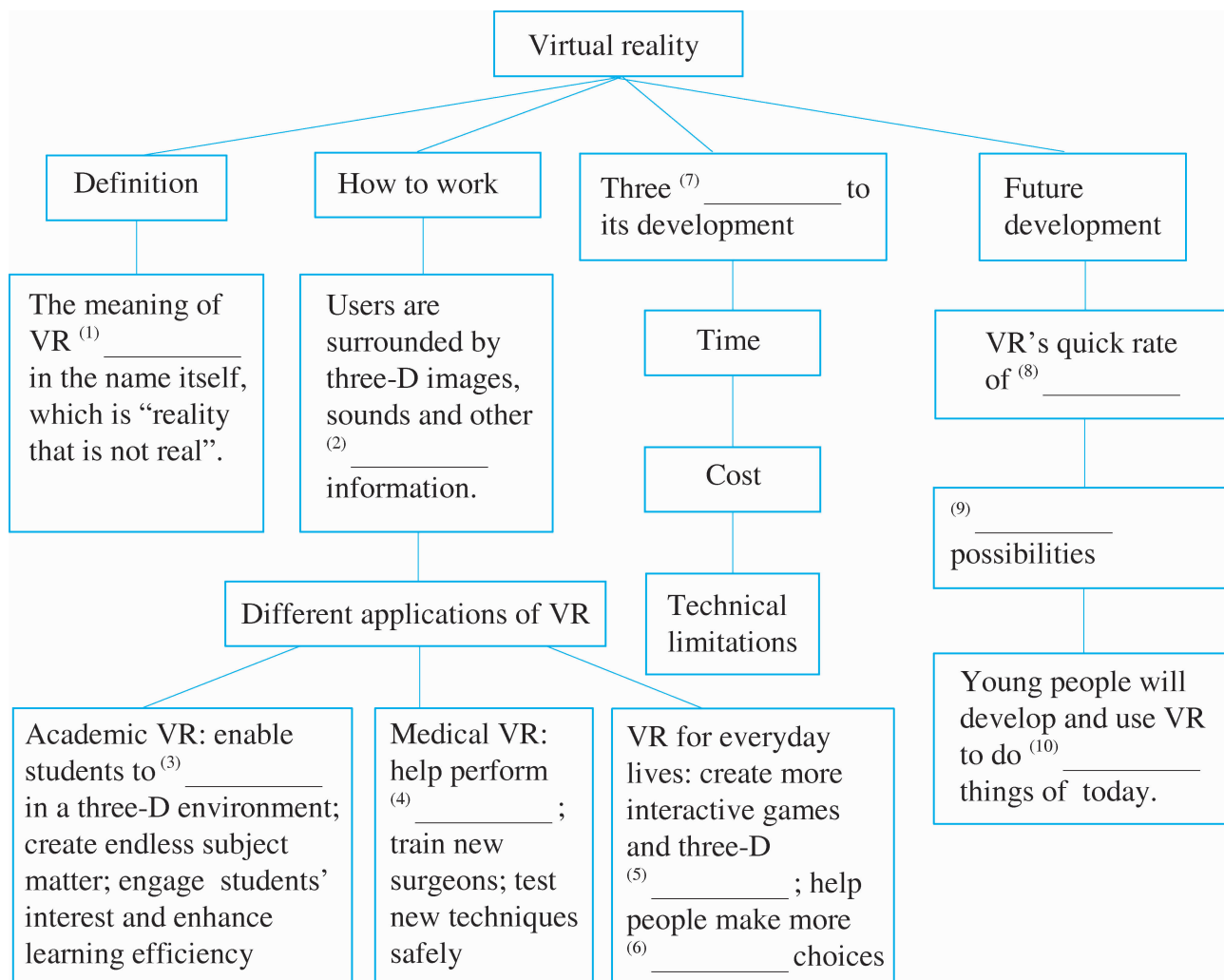
1. was engaged to
2. to engage the attention of
3. engaged in

进阶 1: 基础巩固

一、根据 Extended reading 课文内容填空, 每空一词

When talking about VR, we should keep in mind that it is <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ at a quick rate. One of the <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ is that 5G technology has its potential to <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ us with more stable mobile connectivity at faster speed, which will help people to <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ themselves in VR experience in <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of where they are. To some degree, we <sup>(6)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ imagination. However, it is <sup>(7)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ that young people today are digital citizens who are taking the lead in using technology. They are well <sup>(8)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to help develop and use VR to do things we might <sup>(9)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to be impossible today. We take a(n) <sup>(10)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ view towards the future of VR.

## 二、根据 Extended reading 课文内容完成思维导图,每空一词



## 进阶 2: 能力提升

## 一、根据首字母或中文提示填空

- There is no general agreement on a standard d \_\_\_\_\_ of happiness.
- My lack of p \_\_\_\_\_ experience in that particular job was a disadvantage.
- New technology has enabled development of an online “v \_\_\_\_\_ library”.
- This college has a good a \_\_\_\_\_ reputation.
- They are encouraged to participate in activities that e \_\_\_\_\_ their attention and interest.
- SpaceX successfully launched new \_\_\_\_\_ (人造卫星) into orbit this month.
- Hearing the news, my \_\_\_\_\_ (最初的) reaction was to decline the offer.
- We do not try to \_\_\_\_\_ (微调) the economy on the basis of short-term predictions.
- Try making a note of the things which \_\_\_\_\_ (使恼怒) you.
- He always travels first-class regardless of \_\_\_\_\_ (费用).



## 二、从方框内选择适当的词组,并用其正确形式填空

at the forefront of	engage one's interest	a host of	enhance learning efficiency	boil down to
the envy of	at the expense of	like weeds	be optimistic about	a barrier to

1. Some people consider shyness as \_\_\_\_\_ communication, but this can be broken down gradually.
2. Their teams have been \_\_\_\_\_ environmental protection activities.
3. He built up the business \_\_\_\_\_ his health.
4. The Tang dynasty produced \_\_\_\_\_ great poets, such as Li Bai, Du Fu and Bai Juyi.
5. Find activities that fully \_\_\_\_\_ and you're good at: singing in a choir, painting or riding fast on a country road.
6. The whole issue will probably \_\_\_\_\_ parental responsibility.
7. Everything in the garden grew \_\_\_\_\_ because the owner had been out for a long time.
8. Bankers \_\_\_\_\_ the country's economic future because foreign investment has been introduced.
9. This is an opportunity for the students to \_\_\_\_\_ in class.
10. His many talents were \_\_\_\_\_ all his friends.

## 三、微写作

结合本单元话题,围绕“What developments in science and technology would you like to see happen and how do you think they will change our lives in the near future?”这一问题,写一篇60词左右的文章。

---



---



---



---

## 进阶3: 综合拓展

### 一、阅读下面短文,从每题所给的A、B、C、D四个选项中选出最佳选项

What if we could interact with technology the way we interact with each other? Social artificial intelligence might be the missing link between man and machines. By studying cognitive (认知的) processes, Preben Wik and his team work to make machines appear more human. Time to say hello to the award-winning robot Furhat.

“Is he talking to me? Does he look friendly? Should I say something?”

How do you make a computer interface (界面) capable of understanding complex questions like the ones above? Preben Wik, the director of Market Creation and Collaborations at Furhat Robotics, seeks solutions to these questions. He is driven by a vision to build an interface that is psychologically (心理上地) closer to humans, that is, using the full spectrum (范围) of human communication, voice, gestures, feelings, etc. and fuelled by so-called social AI.

“Social AI isn’t the type of AI we usually talk about, but to make machines come to life we have to look at animals’ cognitive processes,” says Preben Wik. “For example, what is needed to be conscious? What is needed to give the impression of being conscious? We are the human face of AI.”

The robot Furhat was born after years of research and development at KTH Royal Institute of Technology in Stockholm, Sweden. By incorporating social AI, the plastic mask comes to life. Furhat acts and appears more like a human, and instead of being a plain interface with buttons and menus, it becomes “socially intelligent participant—co-presence”.

Furhat’s face uses computer animation (动画制作) with expressiveness and customizability. Its brain is powered by a conversational intelligence platform which makes it possible to build highly complicated and socially-aware spoken interactions. It can also be connected to a number of sensors and any type of back-end device for information questions, equipping it with super power.

So, where can Furhat be employed? Anywhere where social intelligence is at the core of the application, and where swiping (刷卡) and clicking just aren’t good enough. Furhat is available as a development platform for researchers and developers to build upon.

“Currently, Furhat is part of applications for health care projects at hospitals and two schools in Stockholm have Furhat in a pilot project for schools,” says Preben Wik. “We have also sold Furhat to several companies, like Disney, Honda, Merck, Intel and KPMG, which all are looking into the big questions of digitization. We honestly believe social robots will revolutionize how people interact with technology.”

- To make AI robots capable of communicating like a human, scientists have to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - keep their plastic masks lively
  - make them cognitively capable
  - store a large pool of complex questions
  - practise interacting with them more
- It can be inferred from Paragraph 6 that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Furhat’s brain is superior
  - the back-end information stays updated
  - power interruption never happens to Furhat’s brain
  - Furhat’s face looks like a computer touch screen



3. In the last two paragraphs of the passage, the writer tries to tell us \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. the availability of Furhat
  - B. several sale plans of Furhat
  - C. several applications of Furhat
  - D. the social intelligence of Furhat
4. What would be the best title for the passage?
- A. A new age for mankind is dawning
  - B. The way we interact with technology
  - C. Furhat bridges the gap between man and machines
  - D. Furhat plays a key role in application for health projects

## 二、阅读下面短文,在空白处填入 1 个适当的单词或括号内单词的正确形式

Famous British physicist Stephen Hawking, <sup>(1)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ mental genius and physical disability had made him a household name and inspiration across the globe, died at age 76.

Propelled (推动) to superstar by his 1988 book *A Brief History of Time*, which became <sup>(2)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ unlikely worldwide bestseller, Hawking devoted <sup>(3)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (he) to unlocking the secrets of the Universe. His genius and wit <sup>(4)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (win) over fans from far beyond the world of astrophysics (天体物理学), earning comparisons with Albert Einstein and Sir Isaac Newton.

Hawking died <sup>(5)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (peaceful) at his home in the British university city of Cambridge in the early hours of Wednesday morning.

“We are deeply saddened that our beloved father passed away today,” Professor Hawking’s children said in a statement <sup>(6)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (carry) by Britain’s Press Association news agency. “He was a great scientist and an extraordinary man whose work and legacy will live <sup>(7)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ for many years.”

Hawking refused to accept the predictions that he would only live for a few years after developing a form of motor neuron disease in his early <sup>(8)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (twenty). The illness gradually robbed him of mobility, <sup>(9)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) him confined to a wheelchair, almost completely paralyzed and unable to speak except through his voice synthesizer (合成器).

“His courage and persistence with his brilliance and <sup>(10)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (humorous) inspired people across the world,” his family said.



## 每周巩固 2 Integrated skills—Project

### 一、根据首字母或中文提示填空

- The time capsule, which was full of various objects, was designed to be opened in the year 6939 and i\_\_\_\_\_ to show what life was like in 20th-century America.
- In Einstein's message to future generations in the capsule, he wrote about the technological p\_\_\_\_\_ humans had made.
- We are crossing the seas by power and use power also in order to r\_\_\_\_\_ humanity from all tiring muscular work.
- The country was sliding into a state of \_\_\_\_\_ (事实上的) civil war.
- This conflict may all \_\_\_\_\_ down to (归结为) a misunderstanding.

### 二、根据所给中文提示完成句子

- It is the greatest \_\_\_\_\_ (障碍) building a farm of their own.
- Her fame was bought \_\_\_\_\_ (以牺牲……为代价) her marriage.
- There are some obvious \_\_\_\_\_ (实际的应用) of the research.
- You have to \_\_\_\_\_ (在学业上做得好) to get into medical school.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ (从……得出结论) their remarks that they were not in favour of the plan.

### 三、用括号中所给单词的正确形式填空

- He always has his head \_\_\_\_\_ (bury) in a book.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ (globe) whaling ban came into effect in 1986 and saved the lives of hundreds of thousands of whales.
- This model is technically \_\_\_\_\_ (superiority) to its competitors.
- It's hard to believe that meat from \_\_\_\_\_ (clone) animals is safe to eat.
- The organization \_\_\_\_\_ (distribution) food to the earthquake victims last week.

### 四、阅读下面短文,从每题所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出可以填入空白处的最佳选项

Amazon is checking out of China's fiercely (激烈地) competitive domestic e-commerce market. The company told sellers on Thursday that it would no longer   1   its third-party online marketplace or provide seller services on its Chinese website.   2  , companies will no longer be able to sell products to Chinese consumers on this e-commerce platform.

The decision marks an end to a long   3   by America's e-commerce giants in the Chinese market. The firms entered the Chinese market with great attention in the early 2000s, only to   4   in the face of competition from China's faster-moving Internet giants.

Amazon has been in talks to   5   its e-commerce business for goods imported into China with a Chinese competitor, NetEase Inc.'s Kaola, in a stock-for-stock transaction (交易), according to a

person familiar with the matter. That would remove the Amazon name from 6 e-commerce in China. Neither company would confirm the progress or details of those 7, nor would they say if they are continuing.

In a written statement, Amazon said it remained 8 to China through its global stores, Kindle businesses and web services. Amazon China's president would leave to take on another role within the company, the company said. The China consumer-business team will report 9 to the company's global team.

When Amazon first entered China in 2004 with the 10 of Joyo.com, it was the largest online seller for books, music and video there. Most Chinese consumers were using cash-on-delivery (货到付款) as their form of 11. Today, Amazon China chiefly caters to customers looking for imported international goods such as cosmetics (化妆品) and milk powder and is a(n) 12 player in the booming Chinese e-commerce market.

Amazon China commanded just 6% of gross market volume in the niche (细分的) cross-border e-commerce market in the fourth quarter of 2018, versus NetEase Kaola's 25% 13 and the 32% held by Alibaba Group Holding Ltd.'s Tmall International.

Chinese consumers are becoming more fascinated with 14 brands. In 2011, 85% of Chinese consumers said they would always buy a foreign brand over a domestic one. By 2020, 80% of respondents said they preferred domestic over foreign brands. Shaun Rein, China Market Research's founder, said American e-commerce giants 15 obstacles in China because they didn't offer the products or user experience that consumers were looking for.

- |                      |                   |                 |                    |
|----------------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. assist         | B. expand         | C. operate      | D. tailor          |
| 2. A. As a result    | B. By contrast    | C. For example  | D. In addition     |
| 3. A. criticism      | B. negotiation    | C. struggle     | D. resolution      |
| 4. A. interact       | B. withdraw       | C. split        | D. survive         |
| 5. A. associate      | B. combine        | C. exchange     | D. supply          |
| 6. A. time-consuming | B. long-suffering | C. ever-lasting | D. consumer-facing |
| 7. A. talks          | B. businesses     | C. competitions | D. instructions    |
| 8. A. related        | B. accustomed     | C. exposed      | D. committed       |
| 9. A. automatically  | B. directly       | C. regularly    | D. secretly        |
| 10. A. breakdown     | B. improvement    | C. purchase     | D. participation   |
| 11. A. refund        | B. payment        | C. sponsorship  | D. trade           |
| 12. A. complicated   | B. critical       | C. original     | D. insignificant   |
| 13. A. share         | B. budget         | C. volume       | D. maximum         |
| 14. A. foreign       | B. luxurious      | C. domestic     | D. fashionable     |
| 15. A. dealt with    | B. forgot about   | C. got through  | D. came across     |

## 参考答案

### Unit 1 The mass media

**Page 1** 1—5 CAADB 6—10 CACCB 11—15 DBADB

**Page 2** 一、1. same 2. priorities 3. complicated 4. Example  
5. rescue 6. injuries 7. approach 8. comprehensive  
9. checking 10. judgement

二、1. damaging 2. have started 3. trapped 4. ambulances  
5. under control 6. confirmed 7. been injured 8. was started  
9. automatic 10. looking into

**Page 3** 一、1—5 EDAGC

二、1. Similarly 2. have created 3. which 4. commercial  
5. However 6. what 7. from 8. bringing  
9. unequal 10. improving

**Page 6** 一、1. *adj.* 关键的; *adj.* 批判的  
2. *n.* 释放; *v.* 发布(新闻、消息); *v.* 解除, 消除  
3. *adj.* 全面的, 综合的; *adj.* 有理解力的  
4. *n.* 歧视; *n.* 辨别力

二、1. commit 2. false 3. contradict 4. trapped  
5. maximum 6. choke 7. extend 8. factual  
9. priority 10. accurate 11. automatic 12. minor  
13. curiosity 14. screaming

三、1. went off 2. under construction 3. for instance 4. come about  
5. bring; to light 6. to sum up 7. relying on 8. be committed to

**Page 8** 一、1. to have been caused 2. investigating the cause  
3. about to; when 4. rush to the conclusion

二、1. rescued; minor injuries; have been rushed  
2. was committed to practising  
3. trapped; an upper floor  
4. required; (should) follow the safety rules  
5. from the same perspective  
6. differs at different stages  
7. worthy of mention; present the truth  
8. be critical about; to blindly trust



**Page 9** 一、1—3 DDC

二、1—5 FECAB

**Page 13** 一、1. founded 2. politics 3. accused 4. elevation  
5. profession 6. drama 7. scholarship 8. category  
9. nevertheless 10. citizen

二、1. during which time 2. charge; with  
3. set up 4. thinks of; as

三、1. had he been seated 2. had finished  
3. had planned 4. had made  
5. had intended 6. had expected

**Page 14** 一、1. haven't 2. is expected  
3. will have left 4. had graduated  
5. have reached 6. has it landed  
7. had been made 8. served

二、1. winning 2. various 3. turning 4. the  
5. which 6. to stay 7. on 8. were recognized  
9. interactive 10. coverage

**Page 15** 一、1—3 CAC

二、1—5 BADBC 6—10 CDABB 11—15 DACCA

**Page 17** 一、1. political 2. variety 3. bathe 4. dramatically  
5. accusation 6. professional 7. tirelessly 8. elevated  
9. equality 10. Unemployment

二、1—4 ABBD

三、1—5 ADGBE

**Page 19** 一、1. tax 2. mount 3. platform 4. Witnesses  
5. membership 6. shot 7. edition 8. broadcast

二、1. instant 2. accessibility 3. comprehensive 4. updated  
5. Popularity 6. official 7. interaction 8. various

三、1. sprang up 2. the same as being perfect

3. decades have witnessed; social media 4. made a hit; due to

5. have transformed the way; than ever before

**Page 20** 1—5 ACCBB 6—10 ACBCC

听力原文

**Text 1**

W: Cindy is always sending text messages in class! Mr Jackson has talked with her about that several times.

M: I know! It drives me mad as well.

**Text 2**

M: The new TV series is so popular among young Chinese.

W: Well, to be honest, watching it is a complete waste of time. But some teenagers are fond of it. I don't know why.

**Text 3**

M: If you want a soft sleeper, it will cost ¥470; if you want a hard seat, it will only cost ¥210. That will save you ¥260.

W: I can't possibly travel on a hard seat for ten hours! That's too uncomfortable.

**Text 4**

W: Jack, you are scheduled for a phone interview sometime next week. When will you have time? It'll take about thirty minutes.

M: The best time will be Wednesday morning or Thursday afternoon.

**Text 5**

W: There is more than enough data for us to use in our report. We don't want to confuse everyone by focusing on too many details.

M: Don't worry. We don't need to use all of the data for the presentation. It's for us to analyze, and then determine what we need and what we don't.

**Text 6**

W: I think you watch too much television. Let's do something different. Shall we have a game of cards with Peter and Jane?

M: You know I don't like cards.

W: Well, I don't like television. In my opinion, they ...

M: I know what you will say. All the programmes are full of violence and bad language, which have a bad influence on our children. And you will say I never do our housework and I stay up till late because I spend much time watching TV.

W: Don't you think it's true?

M: Well, honey, it's not all true. It's very important to watch the news. And football matches are exciting. Listen! I've got an idea. Let's watch twenty minutes of the news, thirty minutes of the football match, and ... Oh, no ...!

W: Aha! A power cut!

**Text 7**

Newspapers in Great Britain differ greatly in their ways of carrying the news. There are serious papers for those who want to know about important happenings everywhere, both at home and abroad. There are popular newspapers for those who prefer entertainment to serious information. The London newspaper that is best known outside Great Britain is probably *The Times*. It began in 1785 and is well accepted as offering accurate news and serious opinions on the news. It calls itself an independent paper, which means that it does not give its support to a particular political party. Its leading articles give the opinions of the editors, not those of the owners of the paper. Letters to the editors are printed



in the newspaper. These parts of *The Times* are always interesting. Most of the letters are on quite serious subjects. But from time to time, there will be long letters on subjects which are not at all serious, for example, on a new fashion of dress or the bad manners of young people compared with manners of thirty years ago.

**Page 22** 二、 It is a common global tendency that print media is on decline while online media is booming. Some people predict the printing days are over, arguing that they see no point in buying a print newspaper when they can get all the news elsewhere for free.

However, from my point of view, the newspaper remains an important source of people's daily news consumption. To begin with, unlike other ways of delivering news, a print newspaper can be physically held in a reader's hands, and this is a huge pro for print editions. In addition, newspapers can provide opportunities for longer, more in-depth feature articles that tend to be read in full. Instead of becoming a thing of the past, print newspapers are still widely read and preferred by many readers.

In conclusion, the golden days of print media are gone forever, but nothing is like the feeling of physically holding a newspaper in hands. After all, the different ways of learning about news are not mutually exclusive. Each news media outlet is effective in its own way.

**Page 22** 一、1—3 BBC  
二、1—5 GEDFA

**Page 26** 一、1—4 CBAC  
二、1. desire                      2. memorable                      3. remember                      4. impressive  
5. appeal                      6. boosting                      7. ambassador                      8. chosen  
9. potential                      10. purchasing

**Page 26** 一、1. absorb                      2. peak                      3. psychology                      4. Channel  
5. advertisements                      6. purchase                      7. slogan                      8. brand  
9. discount                      10. tailored  
二、1. be based on                      2. was absorbed in                      3. search for                      4. get across  
5. appealing to                      6. is linked with                      7. brighten up                      8. referred to

**Page 27** 一、1—4 DCBC  
二、1. are intended                      2. who/that                      3. defined                      4. to get  
5. via/through                      6. advertising                      7. editors                      8. itself  
9. briefs                      10. approval

**Page 29** 一、1. amusement                      2. psychological                      3. memorable                      4. persuasive  
5. advertising                      6. placement                      7. purchaser                      8. personalized  
9. reference                      10. effectively  
二、1. part of; an important vehicle for  
2. tailor the treatment to; thus benefiting  
3. As a common channel; short message service  
4. is designed/meant/intended to boost; peak  
5. sponsored by; enjoyed great popularity

三、1—5 CACDB 6—10 CBDBA 11—15 DABCA

四、1. with 2. globally 3. been reported 4. which  
5. more frequent 6. to find 7. working 8. it  
9. be softened 10. in

## Unit 2 Sports culture

**Page 31** 1—5 FBGCD

**Page 32** 一、1. Test 2. History 3. ancient 4. rose  
5. motivates 6. boundaries 7. Olympians/Athletes  
8. Demonstrate 9. recognized 10. devotion 11. ranked  
12. hurdles  
二、1. solidarity 2. participate 3. brought 4. origins  
5. lighted 6. flame 7. track 8. applauded  
9. consistent 10. trend

**Page 33** 1—4 BCAD

**Page 37** 一、1. *vt.* 给……排名; *n.* 地位, 级别  
2. *n.* 出身, 血统; *n.* 起源, 来源  
3. *vi.* 鼓掌; *vt.* 称赞

二、1. solidarity 2. racial 3. diverse 4. joint  
5. motivate 6. humanity 7. trend 8. elections  
9. faith 10. ambition 11. identical 12. fellows  
13. relayed 14. demonstrated 15. proceed

三、1. compete in 2. in the spirit of 3. die out 4. give birth to  
5. is recognized as

**Page 38** 一、1. compete against; hoping 2. number of medals; came first  
3. to fly across; by plane 4. Having noted down/After noting down  
5. proceeded to read 6. have made joint efforts to

二、1. bring joy to people; push the boundaries of human achievement  
2. light the Olympic flame at the opening ceremony  
3. bring him back to life  
4. have come to public attention  
5. calls on young people to devote themselves to  
6. in the hope of

三、 The fighting spirit of Olympic athletes inspires us teenagers. Above all, the Olympic spirit demonstrated by the athletes is so moving that I will spare no effort to study academic knowledge from now on. Besides, equipped with modern skills and knowledge, I will serve the country heart and soul in the future. What's more, just like Olympians winning medals for their mother countries, I will win glory for our motherland and for myself.





**Page 39** 一、1—5 DDCAB 6—10 DACBC 11—15 BDACB

- 二、1. unforgettable 2. eighties 3. that 4. runners  
5. allowing 6. when 7. to walk 8. it  
9. become 10. more favourable

**Page 43** 一、1. chest 2. limit 3. constitution 4. amateurs  
5. ankle 6. cheek 7. session 8. chairmen  
9. gradually 10. Marathon

- 二、1. Much parking space was being saved in cities (by people) by taking public vehicles.  
2. Two expressways had been built by this city by the end of last year.  
3. Outer space had not been explored (by people) before 1957.  
4. The plan had been sent to the manager by the secretary before the meeting started.  
5. My computer was being checked by my neighbour at 10 last night.  
6. The tiger was being fed some nice meat by visitors at this time yesterday.

- 三、1. were being built 2. was being cleaned  
3. had been taken 4. had not been sent  
5. were being made 6. was being renewed  
7. had been suspended 8. Was; being put  
9. were being held 10. had not been demonstrated

**Page 44** 一、1. lacking in/I lacked; join in 2. Having learnt; a large sum of; collected  
3. Stepping back; satisfied 4. hadn't been made

- 二、1. had already covered 200 kilometres 2. had been taken to a big hotel  
3. had been produced 4. had been sent back to the Earth  
5. had been widely used  
6. was being mended for the coming half-marathon  
7. she was being watched  
8. Many automobiles were being built by hand

- 三、1. Originated 2. that 3. a 4. before  
5. competitors 6. nor 7. responsibility 8. to host  
9. had been held 10. ranking

**Page 45** 1—5 BCDA 6—10 CCDBB 11—15 DDCAB

**Page 47** 一、1. participation 2. motivation 3. demonstration 4. applauded  
5. ambitious 6. limitation 7. process 8. consist  
9. elected 10. identity 11. constitutes 12. Competition; competitor

- 二、1. devoted himself to 2. raise money for  
3. live side by side 4. was identical to  
5. take a step back 6. call on  
7. clear up 8. bring joy and excitement to  
9. building bridges between 10. deserved applause

三、1—5 CABBC 6—10 ABCAB 11—15 DADCD

- Page 49**
- 一、1. celebrity            2. unselfish            3. dignity            4. humility  
       5. bends                6. pour                7. grace                8. bitter  
       9. glory                10. opponent
- 二、1. had been awarded            2. crashed            3. scoring  
       4. delivering            5. being beaten            6. breathing  
       7. had been organized            8. was being tested
- 三、1. in praise of            2. without hesitation  
       3. fellow competitors            4. come second  
       5. walking on air            6. keep it in perspective  
       7. return to normal            8. reflect on

**Page 50** 1—5 CACBC    6—10 CBBCA

听力原文

**Text 1**

M: Do you like watching the Winter Olympic Games, Lily?

W: Of course. All the games are exciting and the competitors are respectable. And it takes more to hold a fierce game for Winter Olympics than it does for Summer Olympics.

**Text 2**

M: What do you like about the Olympics?

W: For me, the Olympics for the disabled always catch my heart. It makes me understand that perseverance makes the impossible possible.

**Text 3**

M: That's my watch alarm. I have an appointment back at the hotel at 11 o'clock.

W: Is it 11 already?

M: No, no. Actually, it's 10:30. I set my watch half an hour fast.

**Text 4**

M: I don't think I answered the 4th question correctly on the test. The teacher may get angry at me.

W: Why worry about it? It's too late.

**Text 5**

M: Uh, I wish someone would change this music. I think it's a little strange and a little loud, too.

W: I'm so happy you said that. I thought I was the only one who didn't like it.

**Text 6**

W: What's the difference between football and rugby?

M: Those two games are quite different. First, there's the size of the teams. In football, a team has 11 players. In rugby there are 15 players on each team. The biggest difference is that in football, only the goalkeeper can use his hands. In rugby, the ball is usually carried forward by players, though kicking is permitted. Also, a rugby ball is oval in shape, not perfectly round like a football.

W: There's a lot more physical contact in rugby, isn't there?



M: Yes. Players usually need to bring a player down to stop him from moving forward with the ball.

This is called “tackling”, as in football. There’s a match on TV this afternoon. Why don’t you watch it with me? I can explain to you.

W: OK.

### Text 7

Shelly-Ann was an 18-year-old high school athlete when she was noticed by Francis. He was convinced that this girl had something of true greatness in her, so he gave her a place in his strict training seasons. Their cooperation produced results. At the Beijing Olympics, Shelly-Ann became the first Jamaican woman to win the 100 metres Olympic gold. One year later, she took gold at the World Championship in Berlin.

Shelly-Ann grew up in poverty and hunger. But all this and the will to get out of poverty shaped her toughness. This tough girl has written a new chapter in the history of sports.

But Shelly-Ann’s victory is far greater than that. She plans to start a foundation for homeless children and wants to build a community centre for them.

**Page 52** 二、 In the Olympic Games, we can see countless Chinese athletes fighting for our motherland, helping Chinese win a place in the world sports. I think an excellent athlete should be patriotic and persistent.

A great athlete should be above all patriotic. Take Lang Ping as an example. As a gold-medal winner, she gave up high-salary jobs abroad and chose to become head coach of the Chinese Women’s Volleyball Team in 2013 and have coached the Chinese Women’s Volleyball Team to win several gold medals ever since. What’s more, persistence in training can make an outstanding athlete. Ding Junhui, a distinguished snooker player, usually spent eight to ten hours every day playing snooker alone when young, which helped him win the championship in the 2005 World Snooker China Open.

In a word, an excellent athlete should spare no effort to practise, persevere in his/her dreams and never give up.

**Page 52** 1—4 ABAC

**Page 56** 一、1. goalposts      2. Unfairly      3. unintentionally      4. estimate  
5. rough      6. curveball      7. unexpected      8. strikes  
9. wasting      10. Below      11. cruel      12. defeat

二、1. Influenced by sports culture, sports idioms come into being in everyday language. Some idioms come from football, such as “moving the goalposts” and “scoring an own goal”. Some are related to baseball, for instance, “in the ballpark” and “throwing someone a curveball”. Still, “below the belt” and “throwing in the towel” are another two common idioms from boxing.

2. I can think of two Chinese idioms related to archery, “百步穿杨” and “箭在弦上”.

“百步穿杨” means piercing a willow leaf with an arrow from the distance of a hundred paces. That is to say one can hit the target at every shot. “箭在弦上” means that the arrow is already fitted to the string. That is to say actions must be taken and there can be no turning back.

- Page 57** 一、1. unintentionally 2. league 3. cruel 4. opposing  
5. complained 6. handle 7. insurance 8. literally  
9. salesmen 10. remarked 11. waist 12. backfire
- 二、1. in the ballpark 2. scored an own goal  
3. found their way into 4. a ballpark estimate  
5. moved the goalposts 6. below the belt  
7. three strikes and you are out 8. throw in the towel  
9. threw; a curveball

**Page 58** 1—5 BAFGD

- Page 59** 一、1. celebrity 2. dignity 3. humility 4. opponents  
5. perspective 6. fist 7. insurance 8. council  
9. venues 10. cruel
- 二、1. seemed to be walking on air 2. In honour of  
3. the fellow competitors 4. have found their way into  
5. trying to move the goalposts 6. life throws you a curveball
- 三、1—4 DCCA

### Unit 3 Fit for life

**Page 61** 一、1—5 BCDEF

- 二、1. going 2. decreasing 3. weeks 4. the  
5. better 6. gained 7. in 8. that/which  
9. strength 10. motivation

**Page 62** 一、1. possibilities 2. shaping 3. depends 4. set  
5. length 6. effective 7. moral  
8. appropriately/properly 9. figure 10. invention

- 二、1. critical 2. effect/influence 3. viruses 4. identifying  
5. means 6. delete 7. restoring 8. normal  
9. weapons 10. fundamentally

**Page 63** 1—5 BCDAB 6—10 BCDAC 11—15 DADAC

- Page 67** 一、1. *n.* 合同; *v.* 与……订立合同 2. *v.* 意味着; *n.* 方法  
3. *n.* 步速; *v.* 踱步 4. *n.* 辩论; *v.* 仔细考虑
- 二、1. Surgeons 2. pace 3. fundamentally 4. ripe  
5. dentist 6. weapon 7. abnormal 8. cells  
9. Ultimately 10. lifespan 11. affect 12. deleted  
13. virus 14. identify 15. restore
- 三、1. figure out 2. without doubt 3. put; in place 4. arise from  
5. be to our advantage 6. wrestling with  
7. applied to 8. prohibiting; from



- Page 68** 一、1. despite 2. continuing; at a fast pace  
3. serving as 4. full of excitement  
5. to our advantage 6. likely to

- 二、1. to be explored and debated on  
2. could be as dangerous as; out of control  
3. identify which genes relate to which diseases; an effective means of  
4. Philosophers; geneticists; officials; wrestle with; moral issues  
5. make it possible to; abnormal

**Page 69** 1—5 BACAA 6—10 DCBAB 11—15 DACAA

- Page 73** 一、1. patent 2. leather 3. conventional 4. disabled  
5. grateful 6. outgoing 7. rubber 8. artificial  
9. equipped 10. withdraw

- 二、1. 现在完成时 2. 一般将来时  
3. 一般现在时 4. 过去完成时,一般过去将来时,一般现在时  
5. 现在完成进行时 6. 过去将来完成时,过去完成时

- 三、1. I am studying English now.  
2. I have studied English for years.  
3. I have been studying English for years.  
4. I studied English yesterday.  
5. I was studying English this time yesterday.  
6. I had studied English for seven years by 2023.  
7. I had been studying English for seven years by 2023.  
8. I will study English next year.  
9. I will be studying English this time tomorrow.  
10. I will have studied English for eight years by the end of next year.  
11. I will have been studying English for eight years by the end of next year.  
12. I said that I would study English tonight.  
13. I said that I would be studying English at that moment.  
14. I said that I would have studied English for eight years by the end of next year.  
15. I said that I would have been studying English for eight years by the end of next year.

- Page 74** 一、1. to win; has been preparing for it 2. have been working in front of the computer  
3. have been waiting for her 4. has been playing outside  
5. has been looking for a job 6. have been cleaning the classroom  
7. has been lying in bed 8. has always been working  
9. have been driving 10. has been raining

二、 **Notice**

Professor Li Hua cannot come to school because of a heavy cough. The original schedule for the lecture “How to Effectively Prevent the Virus” chaired by Professor Li will be postponed to

9 a.m., 9 November in Room 101, Classroom Building. All the teachers and students who want to participate in it are welcome.

Student Union

- Page 75** 一、1—5 CDABC 6—10 DBADC 11—15 BADCA
- 二、1. an 2. that/which 3. anxiety 4. but 5. variety  
6. necessarily 7. are injured 8. assessment 9. having 10. By
- Page 77** 一、1. debate 2. finding 3. cancer 4. specialize  
5. characteristics 6. talent 7. restore 8. restrict  
9. resistance 10. innovations
- 二、1. a means of 2. run wild 3. moral issues 4. a wide range of  
5. and beyond
- 三、1—5 BCDBC 6—10 DABAD 11—15 CCABD
- 四、1. less 2. than 3. awareness 4. director 5. talented  
6. at 7. were instructed 8. a 9. lowers 10. clearing
- Page 79** 一、1. adjust 2. tackle 3. disturb 4. fuelled 5. disability
- 二、1. held on to 2. have been equipped with 3. made great progress  
4. is capable of 5. be grateful for 6. fuelled concerns  
7. came up with 8. focuses on 9. suffering from  
10. give rise to
- 三、1. has been leading an unbelievably 2. revealed; missing/lost/gone  
3. authority over 4. to adjust to their new glasses 5. to lead the way
- Page 80** 1—5 BACAC 6—10 BBABC

听力原文

**Text 1**

W: Did you buy the fitness card?

M: Yes. The saleswoman said the card was on sale that very day, and that it was 40% off. I bought it for 48 dollars.

**Text 2**

W: Look! The roofs are all white! We didn't see snow last weekend, did we?

M: No, it was clear. The broadcast says that it will be rainy in a few days.

**Text 3**

M: Are you going to the UK next spring?

W: I want to take part in the London Marathon, but my friends have been trying to persuade me to stay in Nanjing instead of going abroad.

**Text 4**

M: How is your new training room?

W: I'm only too satisfied with it. The previous one was too huge and I had to share that with my teammate—no privacy, you know!



### Text 5

W: I hope the weather will stay fine and the football match can be held as planned.

M: So do I. Then we will have two days off next week.

### Text 6

M: Do you still remember the first concert you attended?

W: Yeah. It was an electronic music festival when I was 19 years old. I went with two other girls.

M: How did you feel about that music festival?

W: It was five years ago. I was very quiet at the time and felt shocked about the exciting atmosphere of the performance.

M: What's one fashion trend you simply do not get?

W: Although I was a model before I became an athlete, sometimes I don't understand why stylists make clothes that never fit or, worse, that nobody will wear. Some are pretty unbearable—I wouldn't call it fashion, but maybe I'm the only one who thinks this.

### Text 7

Mark is proof that you can achieve your goals at any age. He is an actor with plenty of accomplishments to hang his hat on. Still, at 48 years of age, he doesn't seem interested in taking a break. He has somehow found a way to get into the best shape of his life right now. Even if you're not trying to look like Mark, you can learn from him that hard work gets you where you want to go, regardless of whether you're 30, 40, or even pushing 50 like Mark.

In this month's magazine, we provide you with the tools you need to help you reach your goals. If you're pressed for time, then our "5 New Workout Flows" story will get you in and out of the gym in no time. In need of extra motivation? Read up on how Mark climbed to fame all on his own. You just need to keep your head down and do the work. We'll be here to spot you along the way.

### Page 81 二、Dear Editor,

Recently our class had a heated discussion about whether parents should buy their children computers. Opinions are divided on this matter.

Some think it's helpful because children can find useful information on their studies. Besides, surfing the Internet also helps broaden their horizons.

However, others think otherwise. First, children usually lack self-control, which means they can easily become addicted to online games. Second, they are too young to tell right from wrong, so they are more likely to be cheated.

In my opinion, parents can buy their children computers, but they must help them to use computers in the right way.

Yours,

Li Hua

### Page 82

A project in the Netherlands provides free accommodation for young people as long as they live with elderly residents for some time per month. It helps the young save rent and gain patience, while the old people enjoy young people's company. Actually, this practice is becoming increasingly



popular around the world. Such projects could resolve loneliness and social isolation felt by the elderly which impact health negatively.

- Page 85** 一、1. Evidence      2. from      3. metal      4. stainless  
 5. Examine      6. pulse      7. selected      8. treat  
 9. severe      10. Mental      11. anxiety      12. phenomenon  
 13. symbol      14. widespread

二、 Chinese acupuncture was developed long ago. Its tools progressed from *bian* stones to metal needles. The acupuncturist first finds out which energy channel lacks energy through looking, listening, smelling, inquiry and pulse-taking. Then needles are pushed into the skin at acupuncture points. Acupuncture is used to treat both physical problems and mental ones. Though how it works is not clearly understood, acupuncture has attracted world-wide interest.

- Page 86** 一、1. solid      2. clinic      3. examined      4. severe  
 5. needle      6. steel      7. abuse      8. substance  
 9. symbol      10. widespread  
 二、1. date back to      2. recognized as      3. will take the place of  
 4. be related to      5. more than      6. stuck to  
 7. Up to now      8. be applied to      9. called for help      10. close to

- Page 87** 一、1—4 DABC  
 二、1—5 EFDAG

- Page 89** 一、1. tongue      2. evidence      3. instrument      4. wrists  
 5. signal      6. organs      7. Drug      8. switch  
 9. alcohol      10. tobacco  
 二、1. lengths      2. examination      3. anxiety      4. phenomena  
 5. infections      6. sensory      7. Resistance      8. restrictions  
 三、1—4 DABC

## Unit 4 Living with technology

- Page 91** 1—3 ADC

- Page 92** 一、1. daydreaming      2. realize/fulfil      3. aim/goal      4. inputs  
 5. performing      6. analyse      7. exploration      8. coined  
 9. applications      10. victim  
 二、1. Basically      2. aimed      3. essential  
 4. capacity/capability      5. adjustments      6. approaches  
 7. proposed      8. previous      9. analysis      10. functioning

- Page 93** 1—3 DBA

- Page 97** 一、1. input      2. capacity      3. analysed      4. coined  
 5. breakthrough      6. urge      7. apparently      8. have posed  
 9. domestic      10. alternative



- 二、1. massive                    2. greedily                    3. demanding                    4. threatened  
       5. autonomously    6. financial                    7. recognition                    8. warning
- 三、1. building castles in the air                    2. have made a major breakthrough in  
       3. to name but a few                    4. There is growing concern  
       5. spell the end of                    6. fall victim to  
       7. to break into

**Page 98**

- 一、1. have no option/choice but to stay                    2. Given; Given that; In view of  
       3. applying; to; come true                    4. should be raised  
       5. is capable of
- 二、1. demanded more of/from                    2. make; fit in with  
       3. face the consequences                    4. a more convenient alternative to
- 三、 Although AI is powerful, it can't do everything that humans do, because it lacks creativity, unable to do complex strategic planning. Moreover, it is poor at dealing with unknown and unstructured fields. Most important of all, it cannot interact with humans "exactly like humans". AI thinking may be thinking, but AI feeling is never feeling.

**Page 99** 1—4 DCDA

**Page 102**

- 一、1. distribution                    2. predict                    3. decrease                    4. deny  
       5. quantity                    6. threat                    7. spy                    8. illegal  
       9. monitor                    10. licence
- 二、1. in large quantities                    2. a serious threat to people  
       3. There is no denying that                    4. come into wider use  
       5. It is certain that; will be flying
- 三、1. will be having                    2. will be teaching  
       3. had got                    4. will be flying  
       5. had been                    6. will be lying  
       7. has been writing                    8. would happen  
       9. returned                    10. would take  
       11. will call                    12. to pass

**Page 103**

- 一、1. Despite; drones can perform                    2. It is predicted that  
       3. It can't be denied that                    4. Assuming that; is applied to
- 二、1. will be raining                    2. will be working on  
       3. will be attending                    4. have been studying abroad  
       5. had stayed seven days                    6. will be working
- 三、 Now all the class are sitting in their classroom. They are listening to a tape. Tomorrow is Saturday and there is no class. So this time tomorrow they will not be sitting in the classroom. Instead, some of them will be sitting in the cinema. They will be watching a film. Some will be doing other things: Bill will be playing tennis, Ann will be shopping and George will still be having breakfast.

**Page 104** 1—5 CABDA 6—10 BCCBA 11—15 CCBDA

**Page 106** 一、1. domestically 2. committed 3. finance 4. autonomous 5. theft  
 二、1. murderer 2. denial 3. recognize 4. prediction 5. analysis  
 三、1—4 DABD  
 四、1—5 ACDFG

**Page 108** 一、1. Wheat 2. contemporary 3. seed 4. buried  
 5. highlighted 6. fountain 7. muscular 8. concluded  
 二、1. a variety of 2. be rich in 3. be justified in  
 4. relieve; from 5. to gain superiority over  
 三、1. were intended to 2. are designed to be shared  
 3. a feeling of proud and justified superiority 4. was coloured by; he lived in  
 5. inventive minds; which; considerably easier

**Page 109** 1—5 CBAAB 6—10 BCCAB

听力原文

**Text 1**

W: The prices of drones are different. You can shop around before you buy.

M: OK, but I need to finish my homework before I start anything else.

**Text 2**

W: I ordered some food for the meeting. The restaurant will get it ready at 11:30.

M: The engineers will not arrive until 12:00. Please ask the restaurant to bring the food an hour after the meeting time.

**Text 3**

W: I'm leaving the office early today. My computer went wrong and I'll have it mended. Could you send this package for me?

M: Sure. You can take my car.

**Text 4**

W: How did you enjoy your travel to the World's Fair held in Shanghai?

M: Oh, I liked it very much. The food was good and I visited many scientific exhibitions there. But the weather was a little hot and I didn't like it.

**Text 5**

M: You've been working too hard and should get some rest. You've already mixed up the orders of two customers.

W: Well, I'll ask the manager for the afternoon off.

**Text 6**

W: Hello, Supertravel. How can I help you?

M: I'd like some information about flights to Shanghai.

W: When do you want to go?

M: I want to leave on Tuesday the 6th of May and come back on Saturday the 10th.



W: It'll be much cheaper if you stay the Saturday night and come back on Sunday the 11th.  
 M: OK then, I'll go from the 6th to the 11th. I'd like to fly early in the morning if possible.  
 W: There's a flight leaving at 8:30 on the 6th, getting to Shanghai at 12:00, and then for the return flight, there's one leaving at 9:00 and arriving at 12:30. Is that OK?  
 M: Yes, that's fine. Did you say I'll get to Shanghai at 12:30 on the 6th of May?  
 W: No, at 12:00. You leave at 8:30.  
 M: And the flight back gets in at 12:30 on the 11th?  
 W: That's right.  
 M: How much does it cost?  
 W: 1095.  
 M: OK, that's fine. I'd like to book a return ticket for those flights.

**Text 7**

Do you know how many men do housework? Weeks ago, a European official group asked many men and women the question, "Who does the housework?" The men answered very differently from the women! The housework they asked people about was preparing meals, washing dishes, cleaning the house and baby-sitting. 48% of British husbands said they did this kind of work. 51% of Danish men said they helped in the house. 15% of Italian men said they did the housework. But there was an interesting point of view from the wives. According to British wives, only 38% of their husbands help in the house. And Italian wives complained that their husbands hardly ever help. The Italian and British men didn't tell the truth! The group found that Danish men were the most truthful husbands. Their answers were the same as their wives.

**Page 111** 二、Dear Peter,

How are you doing? You said in your last letter that you would like to learn Chinese. Now, I am writing to give you a hand.

To begin with, attending a training course will provide you with the most widely used words and expressions. Moreover, some native books and magazines as well as some TV programmes will help you learn more of our culture. Finally, if I were you, I would make some local friends. Considering that, as the saying goes, practice makes perfect.

Hopefully you would master this wonderful language before long!

Yours truly,  
 Li Hua

**Page 111** 一、1—5 GABFE

- |                 |          |                |               |
|-----------------|----------|----------------|---------------|
| 二、1. to include | 2. named | 3. reported    | 4. be applied |
| 5. practical    | 6. who   | 7. have joined | 8. by         |
| 9. globally     | 10. a    |                |               |

**Page 114**

- |                   |                  |             |             |
|-------------------|------------------|-------------|-------------|
| 一、1. evolving     | 2. possibilities | 3. provide  | 4. immerse  |
| 5. spite          | 6. lack          | 7. exciting | 8. equipped |
| 9. consider/think | 10. optimistic   |             |             |

- 二、1. lies                      2. sensory                      3. interact                      4. surgery  
 5. exhibitions                  6. informed                      7. barriers                      8. evolution  
 9. Endless                      10. impossible

- Page 115** 一、1. definition                  2. practical                      3. virtual                      4. academic  
 5. engage                      6. satellites                      7. initial                      8. fine-tune  
 9. annoy                      10. expense

- 二、1. a barrier to                  2. at the forefront of                  3. at the expense of  
 4. a host of                      5. engage your interest                  6. boil down to  
 7. like weeds                      8. are optimistic about                  9. enhance learning efficiency  
 10. the envy of

三、 I'd like to see a virtual world created with the help of VR technology so that people could live in both a real world and a virtual one. We could not only play games, travel or experience excitement in the virtual world, but also do whatever we could not do in reality. I'm sure, accordingly, our lives will be changed thoroughly in the near future.

- Page 116** 一、1—4 BACC

- 二、1. whose                      2. an                      3. himself                      4. won  
 5. peacefully                  6. carried                      7. on                      8. twenties  
 9. leaving                      10. humour

- Page 119** 一、1. intended                  2. progress                      3. relieve                      4. virtual                      5. boil

- 二、1. barrier to                  2. at the expense of                  3. practical applications  
 4. do well academically                      5. concluded from

- 三、1. buried                      2. global                      3. superior                      4. cloned  
 5. distributed

- 四、1—5 CACBB                  6—10 DADBC                  11—15 BDACD

## Unit 1 达标测试卷

### 听力原文

第一节 听下面 5 段对话。每段对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听完每段对话后,你都有 10 秒钟的时间来回答有关小题和阅读下一小题。每段对话仅读一遍。

#### Text 1

W: I'm learning my Chinese lessons very slowly. It's more difficult than English.

M: Well, do more practice. Rome wasn't built in a day, right?

#### Text 2

W: Derek, whose birthday party are we going to?

M: Amy's. She is my fellow worker Karl's wife. I guess you've met them before.

#### Text 3

M: Tina, where are you headed?

W: Hey, Matt, I'm running to the bookstore to pick up a book I ordered. Want to come with me?



#### Text 4

M: Excuse me. I just came in here to ask you to keep your voice down. My apartment is right next to this laundry room and you know how thin the walls are here.

W: Oh, sorry. I'll try to be quieter.

#### Text 5

M: May I see your air ticket and passport? And what is your purpose of visiting?

W: Yes, here you are. I'd like to go sightseeing around the country.

第二节 听下面 5 段对话或独白。每段对话或独白后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听每段对话或独白前,你将有时间阅读各个小题,每小题 5 秒钟;听完后,各小题将给出 5 秒钟的作答时间。每段对话或独白读两遍。

听第 6 段材料,回答第 6、7 题。

W: I'm stressed out by holiday parties with lots of treats like cookies, candies, and chips! As if that wasn't enough, I haven't really been able to exercise and I think I've gained ten pounds recently.

M: I'm sorry to hear that, but you are not alone. Many people gain weight.

W: I think I should make my goal to lose fifty pounds! I could start by not eating sweets.

M: That's a good idea. You could also try to eat more natural foods.

W: What do you mean by natural? I don't want to eat vegetables only! I like to eat things with meat!

M: Eating natural foods means you eat more fruit, vegetables, and unprocessed meat.

W: Like what?

M: Instead of eating a hot dog, you might choose to eat a salad with some grilled chicken.

W: Thanks for your advice, Paul!

听第 7 段材料,回答第 8 至 10 题。

W: Hello, welcome to The Daily Grind. What can I get for you?

M: Good morning! I actually have no idea what I want to drink today. Any recommendations?

W: Do you drink your coffee black? Or do you prefer to add cream, sugar, or milk to it?

M: I definitely do not drink it black. The taste is so strong.

W: OK, well, then, do you like sweet coffee?

M: I guess so. To be honest, I'm not much of a coffee drinker. I've always been more of a tea drinker, but lately my friends have all started going out for coffee and juice. I feel like a fool when it is time to order because I have no idea what to get.

W: Coming right up! You can pick up your drink at the end of the bar. Have a great day!

M: Thanks for your help. Where is your tip jar?

W: Down at the end of the counter with the drinks.

M: Great! Have a great day!

听第 8 段材料,回答第 11 至 13 题。

W: Jay, how were your New Year's celebrations?

M: I celebrated with my host family since I didn't go home. It's a long way from here to Beijing.

W: Did you have a good time with your host family?

M: Yeah, it was fun sharing our stories. What did you do to celebrate the New Year?

W: Each family is different, I think. But one of my family traditions is the Rose Bowl and the Rose Parade.

M: Wait, what's the Rose Bowl? And what's the Rose Parade?

W: Well, the Rose Bowl is an annual American college football game, usually played on 1 January. The Rose Parade is held on the same day, unless New Year falls on a Sunday.

M: Then, anything fun?

W: It includes flower-covered floats. There are also marching bands. It's really cool!

听第9段材料,回答第14至16题。

M: How was your interview, Emily?

W: It was pretty good. Two weeks ago, I had my phone interview with Teach for America, and then this weekend, I had the in-person interview.

M: How was the in-person interview? I heard it's really stressful.

W: It was. It lasted all day. When we started, we were in a group of ten people or so. We each had prepared a five-minute lesson, then we had to discuss a problem in a group and reach a solution, and finally we were interviewed one-on-one. It was really a long day.

M: Yeah, I can imagine! When do you hear back?

W: They said three to four weeks. Have you started looking for jobs yet? Can you believe graduation is only a few months away?

M: I've thought about it, but I get so anxious when I think about the future that I've stopped right now. I'm just going to focus on my studies for a bit longer. Once midterm exams are over, I think I will start again.

听第10段材料,回答第17至20题。

Welcome to On the Town from BBC. I'm Neil. This is the programme where we visit some of the most interesting places in London. Today we're at the British Museum.

Firstly, I'd like to brief you on the history of this world-famous museum. It was founded by King George II in 1753 to house the collection left by Sir Hans Sloane.

It contains collections throughout time, across the globe. You can see Egyptian mummies, ancient Greek statues and even Terracotta Warriors borrowed from Xi'an Museum under one roof. Financed by the UK government, it is free to visit the permanent collection. You'll need tickets to visit some rooms, though.

As for recommendation, you can visit the great Reading Room, round in shape in the centre of the museum. You might also see the Lewis Chessmen. It is a large group of chess pieces carved from whale bone. See the chess set in Room 40. And you can see the huge head of an Egyptian pharaoh in Room 4 as well as the Easter Island Statue in Room 24.

If you want to learn more, please go to our website.

Hope you enjoyed this programme and see you next time.

### 参考答案

1—5	BCBAC	6—10	BACAA	11—15	CACAB	16—20	ABCBC
21—25	AADDDB	26—30	BCBAA	31—35	BDACC	36—40	EFCDB
41—45	CBCDA	46—50	CBDAD	51—55	ACBDC		





- |                 |              |                  |                  |
|-----------------|--------------|------------------|------------------|
| 56. to go       | 57. because  | 58. an           | 59. had expected |
| 60. curious     | 61. critical | 62. interviewing | 63. accurately   |
| 64. was accused | 65. in       |                  |                  |

### 写作 第一节

Last Sunday, our class held a debate on the advantages and disadvantages of advertisements.

The team for advertisements held the opinion that advertisements could keep people informed of the latest products, services or ideas, thus offering people more options. Also, public service advertisements are made to serve the public, aiming to help them lead better lives. However, those with a totally different view argued that advertisements often played tricks on people, trying to fool people into buying unnecessary things. Additionally, advertisements could affect people's life negatively.

Finally, the team for advertisements beat their opponent. But people should be reminded that they must use their intelligence and not be a slave to advertisements.

### 写作 第二节

Suddenly, the front door burst open. Startled, I thought, oh, no! Here came Jack, who was thought far from gentleness, checking up on us again! As he came to the desk, however, I looked up to see his big hand gripping a pickle jar. And in the jar was the loveliest, long-stemmed red rose I'd ever seen. Jack handed it to me and said, "I noticed what a bad time you were having tonight. This is for you, from me and my mother."

Putting down the rose on my desk, he turned and left. Before I could say something, he walked out of the room, and with a roar from his motorcycle, rode out into the darkness. I was near to tears again, overwhelmed by the genuine love from this seemingly loud and rude but actually loving and gentle man. I'd received many gifts and cards from many grateful patients and their families, but they never touched me more than the red rose in the pickle jar given to me that night.

## Unit 2 达标测试卷

### 听力原文

第一节 听下面 5 段对话。每段对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听完每段对话后,你都有 10 秒钟的时间来回答有关小题和阅读下一小题。每段对话仅读一遍。

#### Text 1

W: This is a wonderful day for working in the garden.

M: Yes, I agree. But I want to play football today.

W: But you can't. You have promised to help me today.

M: OK. You're right. I'll help you.

#### Text 2

W: Do you live very far from your school?

M: About eight kilometres, but it doesn't seem that far. There isn't much traffic along this road. It's great to go by bike.

#### Text 3

M: What's wrong with you? You look so upset.

W: Tom never keeps his word. He promised to return my \$50 last month, but he only gave me \$15 last week.

**Text 4**

W: Sorry, Ryan. I can't go to the cinema with you today. I have got an appointment for a dental check-up at 3.  
Could we make it tomorrow?

M: OK, but I can't come until 5 because I have to go to the hairdresser's immediately after school.

**Text 5**

W: When can I collect my computer?

M: Well, we're a bit busy at the moment but we can get around to it by Friday. So if you come around next Monday ... Oh, Monday is a holiday, so pop around the following day then.

第二节 听下面 5 段对话或独白。每段对话或独白后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听每段对话或独白前,你将有时间阅读各个小题,每小题 5 秒钟;听完后,各小题将给出 5 秒钟的作答时间。每段对话或独白读两遍。

听第 6 段材料,回答第 6、7 题。

M: Hello, may I speak to Mr Brown?

W: I'm sorry. He is out for lunch. Would you like to leave a message?

M: What time do you expect him to be back?

W: Say ... in half an hour.

M: Thank you. I'll try back later.

听第 7 段材料,回答第 8、9 题。

W: What do you usually do on the weekend?

M: I usually take short trips to nearby places with friends.

W: Good! I like hiking and cycling. But swimming is my favourite.

M: That's great! I think it's a very healthy activity. Where do you swim?

W: Mostly at the city swimming pool. Sometimes I go to the beach with friends.

M: I know you really like nature.

W: Well, what else do you do in your free time?

M: I love fishing in the river.

W: Nice! You really know how to enjoy life.

听第 8 段材料,回答第 10 至 12 题。

W: Summer vacation is coming and it will last for two full months. Where are you going?

M: I haven't decided where to go yet. What about you?

W: I'm going to Yangshuo in Guangxi province with my parents to spend the first month of the vacation there.

M: Why do you want to go there?

W: Well, as we all know, Yangshuo is one of the most beautiful places in the world. I can try some local dishes and enjoy the comfortable climate there. And the natural scenery attracts me the most.

M: Wow! That sounds great!

W: Why not come with us?

M: Well, I'd like to, but I have an appointment with my friends. They are talking about going to several different places, such as Lijiang, Wuyuan and so on.



W: Where do you want to go?

M: I am dreaming of going to Lijiang, but I don't know if everyone will agree to go there.

听第9段材料,回答第13至16题。

M: Now, Kathy, do you know when the visitors from Italy are coming?

W: We offered them three choices—the end of March, the middle of April, and the beginning of May. And they chose the earliest one, which is good actually, with the exams coming up in May.

M: Right. And how many visitors are coming? Did you say about twelve?

W: Yes, they said twelve at first, but changed to ten this morning.

M: Good, we have eight weeks to prepare. Here are my suggestions: on the first day, a welcome party; then they can visit the schools in the district on the second and third days.

W: We've got to remember this group wants to look at how computers are being used in the classroom.

M: Exactly, so I want to ask Mr Goodman to give them a talk on this on the afternoon of the third day.

W: That'll fit in very nicely.

M: And on their last day, they want to do some sightseeing. We can take them on the tour of London, but many of them may have been there already. And Scotland will be too far away.

W: Why not take them for a walk along the coast? It should be interesting.

M: Good idea, Kathy. I'm sure they'll like it.

听第10段材料,回答第17至20题。

Have you ever flown on Virgin Atlantic Airways or used a Virgin mobile phone? If so, you have put a few more dollars in Richard Branson's pocket. Born in Britain in 1950, Richard is a world-famous businessman. He's best known for his bravery. He is exciting and has never been afraid to take a risk. Richard had an unusual teenage life. His difficulty with reading and writing made school a constant struggle. However, he started a national magazine called *Student* when he was only 16 years old. At 17, he decided to set up a student advisory centre to help other young people. Richard started the now-famous Virgin brand in the music industry in 1970. He began by opening a mail-order company that sold records of discount prices.

Two years later, he built a recording studio and took chances on new musicians that no other recording companies would sign. In 1992, Richard sold Virgin Records for one billion dollars. By then, he had moved into many other industries, including publishing and air travel. Virgin Atlantic Airways, which Richard started in 1984, has long been Britain's second-largest international airline. However, Richard has always dreamed about flying even higher. In 2004, he founded a space tourism company called Virgin Galactic. Anyone with \$200,000 to spare can go online and book a ticket to travel in space in the future.

参考答案

- |                 |                |               |               |
|-----------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1—5 CABCC       | 6—10 CACCA     | 11—15 BCABB   | 16—20 CABAB   |
| 21—25 CCDDDB    | 26—30 ACDDC    | 31—35 ACBDD   | 36—40 CADBF   |
| 41—45 CACBD     | 46—50 AABBA    | 51—55 BDBCC   |               |
| 56. to change   | 57. growing    | 58. In        | 59. whose     |
| 60. unnecessary | 61. sweeten    | 62. addictive | 63. has grown |
| 64. but         | 65. quantities |               |               |

## 写作 第一节

Dear Peter,

I'm exceedingly delighted to hear from you. Learning that you intend to know the physical exercise in our school and the following information may give you a rough idea.

To begin with, a grand new stadium has been completed and put into use, which has become the new landmark in our school. Moreover, with the stadium set up, a wide range of sports events are to be held conveniently, of which ping-pong, football as well as running competitions enjoy great popularity. As for me, I'm enthusiastic about basketball since it has been giving me strength to face the challenge in my life.

All in all, I sincerely invite you to visit our school and participate in sports together.

Yours,

Li Hua

## 写作 第二节

Ada then found a strong stick, which she would use to keep his leg straight. She gently explained what she was going to do then carefully wrapped the shirts around Roy's leg and the stick. Roy cried out in pain. "I know it hurts," Ada said softly. "But this will hold it still until you get to the hospital." When Ada was done, she looked up and saw Roy's mama watching from a few meters away. Behind her was a neighbour in a pickup truck. When Ada stepped away, Roy's mama ran over and held Roy's face in her hands. "Thank you, Ada," she said. Ada helped them lift Roy into the truck, then they drove down the hillside towards the hospital.

The next day, Betty came to Ada's home. "I heard what you did," Betty said. "You kept your head in an emergency. That's an important skill." Ada's face turned red. "I was afraid ..." Betty shook her head. "It's OK for a nurse to be afraid, as long as she has a clear head. The volunteer doctors are coming tomorrow with vaccines. We need some more hands. Can you help?" "I'd love to," Ada replied at once. "Come early, then. There is a lot to learn." Ada smiled. "I'll bring my first-aid book."

## Unit 3 达标测试卷

### 听力原文

第一节 听下面 5 段对话。每段对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听完每段对话后,你都有 10 秒钟的时间来回答有关小题和阅读下一小题。每段对话仅读一遍。

#### Text 1

M: What are you doing? You can't park there. That is for disabled people.

W: Oh, I didn't even see that. All right, all right, I'll find somewhere else to park.

#### Text 2

W: The refrigerator broke again. Should I call the repairman?

M: The same one you called last time? I don't think so. He charged us a lot. I took a course online so maybe I can do it myself this time.

#### Text 3

M: Thanks for helping Tommy with his math. You must stay and have supper with us.

W: I'd love to, but I have to visit my grandmother tonight. I'm going to Shanghai for a conference, and I want to make sure she has enough groceries for a while. And I'll probably make her some food while I'm there.



#### Text 4

W: My favourite animal is the dolphin. They make such funny sounds, and they are very smart.

M: Dolphins are cool, but sharks are way better. They are so fast in the water and they can grow to be some of the biggest fish in the world.

#### Text 5

M: Hi, I've just checked in. Is food still being served?

W: I'm sorry sir. The restaurant is just closing. It is open from 6 p.m. to 10 p.m. However, room service is available until 11 p.m., so you have an hour to order.

第二节 听下面 5 段对话或独白。每段对话或独白后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项选出最佳选项。听每段对话或独白前,你将有时间阅读各个小题,每小题 5 秒钟;听完后,各小题将给出 5 秒钟的作答时间。每段对话或独白读两遍。

听第 6 段材料,回答第 6、7 题。

W: Good morning. I'm afraid we don't have your favourite today. Our supplier didn't deliver any.

M: What other types do you recommend?

W: Well, the lady sitting over there used to order the same Brazilian coffee you have. Then one day she tried Italian and she's been having it every day since.

M: Hmm, I'll try that then, but I don't think I'll be changing permanently. It's my weekly treat after a tough morning at the office.

W: It's good to try different things. I went to a French restaurant once and tried snails. I didn't think I'd like them but they were great.

听第 7 段材料,回答第 8 至 10 题。

M: What was the last thing you bought?

W: Let me think—was it a Superman toy for my dog? No, it was an ice cream maker.

M: Do you ever save money?

W: No. I'm always overdrawn at the bank.

M: Your mum and I have always taught you to manage your money wisely. Has any of that sunk in?

W: Live for today. That's what I say. Who knows what will happen tomorrow?

M: We know—simply because we have lived longer. You should save up and use money wisely instead of wasting too much on clothes and things you don't need.

W: Maybe you're right ... but the shopkeepers can be so persuasive.

M: Of course, it's their job. It is your responsibility to look after your own interests.

听第 8 段材料,回答第 11 至 13 题。

W: I really miss my mother's roasted chicken.

M: Why don't we go and visit her?

W: I wish we could. It's been five years since we went to Mexico City for Christmas.

M: Well, I have a surprise. I bought plane tickets for 28 October. We'll be there for a week.

W: Really?

M: Yes, dear.

W: I can't believe it! We'll be there for the Day of the Dead on 2 November, too! That's a very important

holiday for my family, you know. We visit the tombs of my grandparents and then have a family dinner in honour of our ancestors.

M: I remember. You've told me about it many times.

W: But you haven't experienced it yet. I'm so happy that you'll be there, too. Oh, Paul, thank you!

M: Well, pack your bags. We're flying to Mexico City from Madrid on the 28th, but we leave New York on the 22nd.

W: Wonderful! We can visit our college friends there.

M: Exactly.

听第9段材料,回答第14至17题。

W: Where is the best place to learn how to swim? I am afraid of the ocean, and there are no lakes around for me to practise in.

M: Why don't you just come over to my house? I swim in my backyard all the time.

W: That sounds great! Which day do you want me to come over? I'm busy with a family party this weekend, but I'm free on Sunday afternoon. I also have Wednesday and Thursday free.

M: I have football team practice on Wednesday and a game the next day. I don't know about Sunday though. Isn't it supposed to be a thunderstorm then?

W: I think I heard about that bad weather coming this way. Maybe we should plan to go swimming sometime next week instead. If it is going to rain on Sunday, would you want to come to my house and watch a movie instead? My parents have a large collection of films.

M: That sounds fun. Do they have anything funny or action-filled to watch?

W: They have a lot of history movies, but there are ones to make you laugh too. I'm sure we will find something that we both can enjoy.

M: OK, well, I will send you a message later this week about it.

听第10段材料,回答第18至20题。

Frank Whittle was a British Royal Air Force officer who invented the jet engine. He was born in a humble house in England on 1 June, 1907. His father was a clever engineer who passed on his skills to his son. Whittle became adventurous, developing an early interest in planes. He joined the Air Force and was taught about aircraft engines, gaining experience in the engineering workshops. He was excellent in his studies and became a pilot. During study time, he had the ideas that led to the creation of the jet engine, and he was given the legal right of ownership of his design in 1930. His studies earned him a place on a further course at Cambridge University, where he graduated with a first class degree. His first engine was tested in 1937. Official interest grew but it was many years before it came into use. Whittle's invention was of great importance. It increased the speed of planes dramatically and jet engines are now used by nearly every airline in the world. Whittle held many important jobs and became a hero in his country. He later married an American woman and moved to the United States, where he became a professor. He died at his home in Maryland on 9 August, 1996.

### 参考答案

1—5	ACBAC	6—10	BACBA	11—15	BCAAB	16—20	CACBA
21—25	CACDA	26—30	DABDB	31—35	DCBAD	36—40	AFCED
41—45	BDCCB	46—50	ADBDB	51—55	AABCD		



- |                |                     |                 |                  |
|----------------|---------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 56. Despite    | 57. beneficial      | 58. application | 59. when         |
| 60. possessing | 61. a               | 62. but         | 63. accidentally |
| 64. in         | 65. was accelerated |                 |                  |

### 写作 第一节

Dear students,

With the development of electronic devices, an increasing number of students tend to use them for taking notes, rather than writing on the paper. As a consequence, our handwriting is not as good as it was in the past. To solve this problem, we should do as follows.

Firstly, we should use less electronic devices while learning. Additionally, it's necessary that we develop the habit of practising calligraphy every day.

Beautiful and neat handwriting is beneficial to us. Let's take action right now! I'm convinced our efforts are to pay off.

Li Hua

### 写作 第二节

She stood by the window, watching. The postman turned round the corner on his bicycle. Her heart beat fast. Johnnie had seen him too and ran to the gate. After a while Johnnie ran up and knocked at her door. "Granny, granny," he shouted, "I've got your post." He gave her four envelopes. Three were unsealed cards from old friends. The fourth was sealed, in Myra's writing. "No parcel, Johnnie?" "No, granny." Maybe the parcel was too large to come by letter post. That was it. It would come later by parcel post. She must be patient.

Almost unwillingly she tore the envelope open. Folded in the card was a piece of paper. Written on the card was a message under the printed Happy Birthday—Buy yourself something nice with the cheque, Myra and Harold. The cheque fluttered to the floor like a bird with a broken wing. Slowly the old lady bent to pick it up. Her present, her lovely present. With trembling fingers she tore it into little pieces.

## Unit 4 达标测试卷

### 听力原文

第一节 听下面 5 段对话。每段对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听完每段对话后,你都有 10 秒钟的时间来回答有关小题和阅读下一小题。每段对话仅读一遍。

#### Text 1

M: Did you get the job you were interviewed for?

W: Yes, and I'm very excited about it. It pays much better than my old job, and I think I'll like the people better, too.

#### Text 2

M: Jenny, Merry Christmas. Here is a little gift for you.

W: Oh, thank you. Wow, you are so thoughtful! I like pink, and I like silk, so this scarf is perfect for me.

#### Text 3

W: This is the apartment—the living room, the bedroom, the kitchen, and the bathroom. And, it's only six hundred dollars a month.

M: Not so cheap, actually. But it's quiet, and should be a nice place for an artist.



**Text 4**

W: Now, can we get the computers before Wednesday?

M: Well, it depends. If it's less than 10 kilometres, we can deliver them on Tuesday. But if it's farther away, it'll be on Thursday. Where is your office?

W: Just around the corner.

**Text 5**

W: Happy Birthday, Jimmy! Are you ready for the next present?

M: You mean there is more besides the watch?

W: Come with us—it's in the car. Now, here we are! You've been talking about this for a month.

M: Oh, it's a new computer! It's just what I wanted. I am so happy! Thank you so much, Mum and Dad.

第二节 听下面 5 段对话或独白。每段对话或独白后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听每段对话或独白前,你将有时间阅读各个小题,每小题 5 秒钟;听完后,各小题将给出 5 秒钟的作答时间。每段对话或独白读两遍。

听第 6 段材料,回答第 6、7 题。

M: Hello, Johnson's Furniture. This is Kevin McMillan speaking. What can I do for you?

W: This is Julia Pauling from CC Computer. We still haven't received the thirty chairs. They were supposed to have arrived by noon the day before yesterday.

M: I'm terribly sorry about that. The truck driver was ill. I spoke with our delivery department at about ten this morning, and they said that the chairs will be delivered by four this afternoon.

W: Excellent. I'm pleased to hear that.

听第 7 段材料,回答第 8 至 10 题。

M: Shall we sit here?

W: Sure!

M: Why didn't you have anything on your plate?

W: Well, I am not even a bit hungry.

M: Is there anything wrong? Do you feel well?

W: I've been really worried. It's my computer. It's in the shop again.

M: Really? What's wrong this time?

W: I don't know, exactly. There seems to be something wrong with the system. It restarts several times within an hour, and I can't save what I have typed.

M: That's too bad.

W: Yeah. I need to hand in a sales report next Monday, and it's already Wednesday today. Besides, I was only halfway through my report, and everything is in the computer.

M: I see. Perhaps you should ask them to get it fixed in just one or two days. Then at least you still have the weekend to work on the report.

W: Yes, I guess you're right. Thanks.

听第 8 段材料,回答第 11 至 13 题。

W: Thanks a lot for coming again.



M: Tell me what happened this time. Is it the keyboard again or the mouse?

W: Well, the keyboard is OK now. And the mouse is working well, too, even though you suggested that I get a new one last time. Actually, the problem is when I was working this morning, the screen suddenly went black.

M: OK. Let me have a look. The screen seems to be working, so I'll take a look at the inside of the laptop. Did you save your files?

W: No, since I didn't know that the computer would stop working. Please don't tell me I've lost my report.

M: I'm afraid so. Here's the problem—something has overheated inside the laptop.

W: Can you fix it quickly?

M: I'll try. It may take a couple of hours. I'll have to take it back to my shop and fix it. I'll test it before I call you. Can I contact you on your mobile phone?

W: Of course. I've learned a lesson today.

M: What's that?

W: Always save your files when you're working on the computer.

听第9段材料,回答第14至17题。

W: Hi, Tom. I know you like computers. What started your interest in them?

M: I built my first computer when I was in junior high school. I was crazy about reading; I studied everything I could get my hands on. Then I turned to build my own machine.

W: Where do you see computers going in the future?

M: You'll have computers on the walls, in your hands, in your cars, throughout your house ... They will all be connected and look less like traditional computers today.

W: What kind of computer do you have?

M: A Huawei notebook, which I use for all my work at the company and for email.

W: Some people say that technology is dangerous and is moving too fast. What's your opinion?

M: Well, this kind of progress can't be stopped. Criticism is always voiced in every generation, and of course, every coin has two sides, but it's important to always consider the good side of the technology we create, for it has improved our society.

听第10段材料,回答第18至20题。

Good morning, everyone. First, thank you for coming to our school for a tour. Now we're standing in front of the main building of our school. I'd like to tell you something about this building. Altogether this building has 14 classrooms for students to take classes. Besides the classrooms, there is also a laboratory and a computer room for students to use. The laboratory is on the first floor and the computer room is on its left. On the second floor, there is a teachers' room where teachers can have a rest after giving a class. But students are always welcome to ask teachers questions there. Our teachers are always happy to help their students. The building opens at eight o'clock in the morning. It means students can study there for an hour before the first class begins at nine o'clock. The building doesn't close until 5:30 in the afternoon. So students can also study there for one and a half hours after school before the building closes. OK. Now please follow me. We're going to the library to look around there.

参考答案

- |                     |                  |                |                |
|---------------------|------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1—5 CCCAC           | 6—10 ACBAC       | 11—15 CABAB    | 16—20 BCACA    |
| 21—25 ADBBD         | 26—30 CCCAB      | 31—35 ADBBC    | 36—40 EGAFD    |
| 41—45 CABAD         | 46—50 CDAAB      | 51—55 CBBAC    |                |
| 56. but             | 57. involved     | 58. reasonable | 59. which/that |
| 60. although/though | 61. are affected | 62. improving  | 63. members    |
| 64. better          | 65. independence |                |                |

写作 第一节

Dear Tom,

You feel like getting some information about artificial intelligence from me, and I'm writing to tell you some aspects. There is no doubt that AI has changed our life, and continues to do so. It has been gaining great popularity in our daily life.

From the positive point of view, artificial intelligence can improve work efficiency. Its rapid development also greatly represents our country's contribution to science and technology.

However, every coin has two sides. The illegal use of AI can do harm to our society. What's worse, just as Stephen Hawking warned, "The development of full artificial intelligence could spell the end of the human race."

So we need to have an objective attitude towards AI. Hope to hear from you again.

Yours,

Li Hua

写作 第二节

I was puzzled because my daughter's new friend looked so familiar. But I was sure that I had never met Jo before. She told me that her family just moved from Los Angeles, which puzzled me even more because I had never been to Los Angeles and we had no relatives living in Los Angeles, either. I convinced myself that it was only my imagination. The two girls got on very well and they giggled from time to time. I watched them play and felt so happy for my daughter from the bottom of my heart.

Two hours passed really quickly, and there was a knock on the door. It was Jo's mum coming to pick her up later that afternoon. On seeing her face, I was shocked. "Judy!" she cried. "It's me, Susan!" We embraced each other. It turned out that her father's company sent her father to Los Angeles before they settled in Florida. She tried calling me later but we had moved. The two little girls were happy to see their mothers became good friends at once before we told them our story, with happy tears rolling down our cheeks.

综合检测评估卷

听力原文

第一节 听下面 5 段对话。每段对话后有一个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听完每段对话后,你都有 10 秒钟的时间来回答有关小题和阅读下一小题。每段对话仅读一遍。

Text 1

W: Could you tell me what I should do if the car breaks down?

M: Well, I'm sure you won't have any trouble. But if it happens, just call this number. We'll see that you get help.



### Text 2

W: This doesn't look all familiar. We must be lost. We'd better ask the way.

M: Let's pull in here. While I'm filling the tank, you ask directions and get me a soft drink.

### Text 3

W: Peter, ask your father to come to the kitchen to have supper now.

M: OK. But where is he? Is he in the garden or in the sitting room?

W: He must be watering the flowers. Tell him to hurry.

### Text 4

W: What will you say about the fly in my soup?

M: Don't ask me. I'm not a pilot, you know.

W: Are you kidding me? Change it or I won't pay for it.

M: All right, madam. Just a joke. Please wait a little while.

### Text 5

M: May I borrow your notebook?

W: For what?

M: You know, the exam is coming.

W: I don't think it's useful. The final exam only accounts for 30% of the total grade. Even if you get a full mark, you still cannot pass.

第二节 听下面 5 段对话或独白。每段对话或独白后有几个小题,从题中所给的 A、B、C 三个选项中选出最佳选项。听每段对话或独白前,你将有时间阅读各个小题,每小题 5 秒钟;听完后,各小题将给出 5 秒钟的作答时间。每段对话或独白读两遍。

听第 6 段材料,回答第 6、7 题。

W: Frontier Airlines. May I help you?

M: I'd like to make a reservation for the second of May.

W: Yes, sir. Could you give me the city you're leaving from and your destination, please?

M: I'll be departing from Houston, Texas, and flying to Chicago, Illinois. I'd like the cheapest flight you have.

W: Well, if you leave at 6 a.m. from Houston on the second, the price for the flight is \$150.

M: And what about from Chicago on the fifth?

W: That's also \$150 if you leave at 6 p.m.

M: Great! Let's do that.

听第 7 段材料,回答第 8 至 10 题。

W: I keep feeling dizzy, and I've got a headache.

M: How long has this been going on?

W: It started yesterday.

M: You've been studying too much recently.

W: I have no other choice. Next month will be the most important exam of this term.

M: I can understand that. But anyway, you should take better care of yourself.

W: What should I do now?

M: I think you should stay in bed for a little while and I will call the doctor.

W: It's very kind of you. Thank you very much.

听第 8 段材料,回答第 11 至 13 题。

M: Hey, Emi. Come in and have a seat. Do you want something to drink?

W: No, thanks. Brad, what happened? This place is a mess.

M: You think so?

W: Yeah! I mean, your house was usually so neat.

M: Oh, well, my parents went out of town for a week, so I'm in charge of the house.

W: You're in charge? But you haven't taken out the trash.

M: Well, not yet, but I'm doing all the cooking.

W: I can see that. When are you going to wash all these dishes?

M: I will do it in a short time. It takes a long time to do everything. I did the laundry. See?

W: Mmm. But you haven't put away the clothes yet.

M: I know.

W: At least you should keep the house clean as it was. I'll give you a hand.

M: Oh, that would be great.

听第 9 段材料,回答第 14 至 17 题。

M: Kate, what are you going to do next year?

W: Next year, when I leave Japan, I'm going back to Australia to work for another 8 weeks and then I'm off to New Zealand to see the rest of New Zealand and then Fiji. After that I'm going to see my best friend. She lives in Kuala Lumpur, so I'm going to the east coast of Malaysia and then I'm going to Thailand and then India, and that's as far as I could get.

M: OK. After that point you don't know where you're going?

W: No, I don't know. Probably I'm going to Canada because my cousin moved there. I'd like to see him.

M: How long do you think you're going to travel?

W: For a year.

M: Wow. So now, do you have anything like a plan after that?

W: Yeah, after it, I'm going back home to write a book about my travels. And I also plan to do my PhD. in computer engineering and then I'm going to train to be an engineer.

M: Wonderful.

听第 10 段材料,回答第 18 至 20 题。

Dear Mum,

I hope you can understand me because I'm writing this letter in English. I'm going to ask Mr Frost, who is a translator, to correct my mistakes. Mr Frost is a German. He moved to London ten years ago and got married with Mrs Frost later. Besides German and English, he also speaks Spanish and French well.

I usually have to work hard after school, but on Fridays Mrs Frost does everything in the house. After working for four evenings as a nurse in a hospital, she likes to spend three evenings with her own children. At the moment, she's putting Elizabeth to bed. Elizabeth asks a lot of questions. It takes a long time to put her to



bed. Isaac doesn't say much, but needs a lot of attention.

I have a Spanish friend called Arturo and we meet in reception before class. His English is a little better than mine, so I think he can help me with my vocabulary. We're going shopping and sightseeing in London tomorrow. Now I need to prepare my sightseeing trip. Remember the big, red *Tourist Guide to London*? It is the biggest thing on my desk!

All the best!

Yours,  
Rosa

### 参考答案

- |              |                |             |               |
|--------------|----------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1—5 ACCAC    | 6—10 ACACC     | 11—15 BCBAC | 16—20 ACCBA   |
| 21—25 BCD CD | 26—30 ABACA    | 31—35 BBCDD | 36—40 FEBDG   |
| 41—45 BCCAD  | 46—50 ABCDA    | 51—55 BACDC |               |
| 56. an       | 57. be stopped | 58. from    | 59. pollution |
| 60. better   | 61. companies  | 62. growing | 63. that      |
| 64. to work  | 65. healthy    |             |               |

### 写作 第一节

Dear friends,

In order to make the environment more beautiful, we should do what we can to protect it. First, we should plant more trees and flowers to make our city more beautiful. Also, always remember not to throw rubbish or pour waste water everywhere. As we all know, water is becoming less and less. So it's quite necessary to save water. For example, turn the tap off after washing. Last but not least, we'd better ride a bike or walk when going out instead of driving a car.

In my opinion, if everyone tries his best to protect the environment, our city will become nicer and cleaner!

Thank you.

Li Hua

### 写作 第二节

As soon as assembly started, he saw the stranger enter the classroom secretly. He picked up some books from three or four desks and slipped out of the school by the back gate. Having found the thief, Jack was not going to let him escape. He followed the boy, keeping a safe distance. The boy walked on and on and Jack followed him. When he crossed the road, Jack also crossed the road. Whenever he stopped, Jack stopped too, making sure of not arousing his suspicion. The boy entered a shop that sold second-hand books. Jack watched the boy from the other side of the road.

Then he called the police and soon, a policeman reached the shop in time. "There he is!" cried Jack as the boy came out. Seeing the policeman, the boy took to his heels. But the policeman ran after him and caught him by the collar. The shopkeeper saw everything and he could no longer stand the strain. He broke down and confessed that he did buy the books from the boy. He volunteered to return the books and even gave up the money he had paid for them.